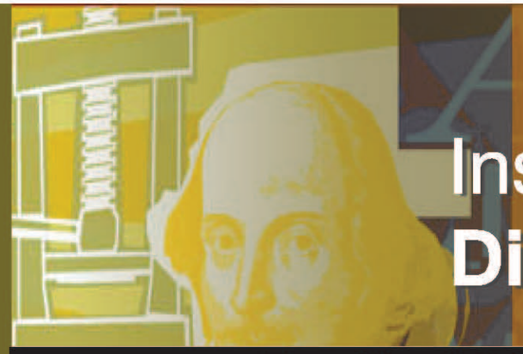
Dr. C.V. Raman University
Kargi Road, Kota, BILASPUR, (C. G.),
Ph. : +07753-253801, +07753-253872
E-mail : info@cvru.ac.in | Website : www.cvru.ac.in

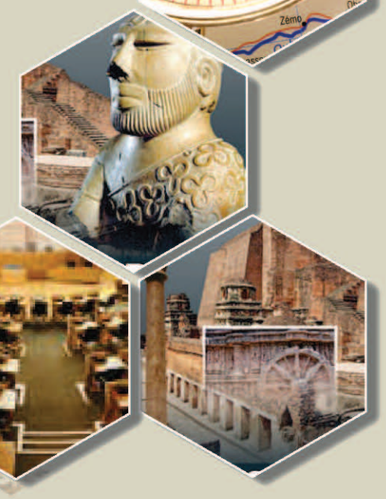
Drama



Institute of **Open** and
Distance Education

Faculty of Arts

Drama



3BA4

DR. C.V. RAMAN UNIVERSITY
Chhattisgarh, Bilaspur
A STATUTORY UNIVERSITY UNDER SECTION 2(F) OF THE UGC ACT

3BA4

Drama

3BA4
Drama

Credit- 4

Subject Expert Team

Dr Kajal Moitra, Dr. C.V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh
Dr Mahesh Shukla, Dr. C.V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh
Dr Reena Tiwari, Dr. C.V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh
Dr Ram Ratan sahu, Dr. C.V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh
Dr Anju Tiwari, Dr. C.V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh
Dr. Sandhya Jaiswal , Dr. C. V. Raman University, Kota, Bilaspur, Chhattisgarh

Course Editor:

Dr Ramsiya Charmkar, Assistant Professor Department of Political Science Humanities and liberal arts, Rabindranath Tagore University, Bhopal, M.P.

Unit Written By:

1. Dr. Om Prakash Tiwari

(Associate Professor, Dr. C. V. Raman University)

2. Dr. Gurprit Kour

(Associate Professor, Dr. C. V. Raman University)

3. Dr. Anupa Thamas

(Assistant Professor, Dr. C. V. Raman University)

Published by: Dr. C.V. Raman University Kargi Road, Kota, Bilaspur, (C. G.), Ph. +07753-253801,07753-253872 E-mail: info@cvru.ac.in, Website: www.cvru.ac.in

BLOCK- I

UNIT 1
DRAMA

Structure:

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Drama is a form of literature that is intended to be performed by actors in front of an audience. It is one of the oldest and most universal forms of artistic expression, encompassing a wide range of themes, genres, and styles. Through dialogue, action, and performance, drama explores human experiences, emotions, relationships, and conflicts, often revealing the complexities of life and society.

Historical Development:

The origins of drama can be traced back to ancient civilizations, particularly in Greece, where **tragedies** and **comedies** were performed as part of religious festivals. The Greek playwright **Sophocles** (author of works such as Oedipus Rex) and **Aristophanes** (known for his comedic plays) are some of the earliest figures in the development of Western drama. The tradition of drama spread through Roman theater, medieval mystery plays, Renaissance theater (especially the works of **William Shakespeare**), and continues to evolve in modern times.

In the 17th and 18th centuries, drama began to develop into more complex forms, with the rise of **tragic** and **comic genres**, as well as **melodramatic** and **realist** movements. Today, drama includes everything from classical works to modern experimental plays, with television, film, and digital media expanding the boundaries of dramatic performance.

Key Elements of Drama:

- **Plot**: The sequence of events that drive the narrative. In drama, the plot is often structured around conflict, whether internal or external, and typically follows a pattern of exposition, rising action, climax, falling action, and resolution.
- **Characters**: The people or entities involved in the drama. Their actions, choices, and interactions form the basis of the play's narrative. Characters are usually complex, with their motivations, desires, and flaws driving the conflict.

- **Dialogue**: The spoken words of the characters. Unlike other literary forms, drama relies heavily on dialogue to convey meaning, develop characters, and drive the plot.
- **Setting**: The time and place in which the drama unfolds. The setting can play an important symbolic role in the story, influencing the mood and themes of the play.
- **Theme**: The central ideas or messages that the drama explores, often reflecting societal issues, human nature, morality, or existential questions.

Genres of Drama:

- **Tragedy**: A genre in which the protagonist experiences significant suffering or downfall, often due to a tragic flaw, fate, or moral conflict. Famous examples include **Shakespeare's "Macbeth"** and **Sophocles' "Oedipus Rex"**.
- **Comedy**: A lighter genre that focuses on humor, often involving misunderstandings, mistaken identities, or social satire. **Shakespeare's "A Midsummer Night's Dream"** and **Molière's "Tartuffe"** are examples of comedic dramas.
- **Historical Drama**: Plays that focus on historical events or figures, blending fact with dramatic imagination. **Shakespeare's "Richard III"** is a well-known example of historical drama.
- **One-Act Play**: A play that consists of a single act, focusing on a concise plot and fewer characters. This format is often used to explore a specific theme or moment in time.
- **Modern Drama**: Plays written in the 19th and 20th centuries that often address contemporary issues, social realism, and psychological complexity. Playwrights like **Henrik Ibsen**, **Anton Chekhov**, and **Arthur Miller** reshaped the structure and content of modern drama.

Importance of Drama:

Drama is a powerful medium for exploring human nature, societal norms, and emotional depth. It provides a space for both catharsis (the release of emotions) and intellectual engagement. Drama can entertain, provoke thought, inspire empathy, and even incite social change by challenging audiences to question their assumptions and values. From ancient theater to contemporary plays, drama continues to be a vital and transformative art form, offering a mirror to society and to the human condition itself.

1.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the significance of drama in exploring human emotions and experiences.
2. Understand how dramatic techniques contribute to storytelling and character development.
3. Understand the importance of collaboration and communication in theatrical performances.
4. Understand the role of drama in fostering creativity and self-expression.
5. Understand the cultural and historical context of various dramatic works.

1.3 DRAMA

Drama is a literary genre that portrays human experiences through dialogue and action, intended to be performed by actors in front of an audience. It is one of the oldest and most versatile art forms, encompassing a variety of styles and formats that engage with emotions, conflicts, and societal issues. Drama explores the complexities of human life and relationships, often revealing truths about society, morality, and human nature through the actions and words of characters.

Key Characteristics of Drama:

1. **Plot**: The structure of events in a drama, typically involving a conflict or struggle that is resolved by the end of the play. This conflict is the driving force behind the narrative, whether it is an internal conflict within a character or an external struggle between characters.
2. **Characters**: The individuals or entities in the drama who are involved in the plot. Characters can be protagonists, antagonists, or supporting roles, and they serve to embody the themes and conflicts of the play. Through their actions, dialogue, and development, characters bring the drama to life.
3. **Dialogue**: The primary medium through which characters communicate and express their thoughts, feelings, and motivations. In drama, the dialogue is crucial as it drives the plot forward, reveals character traits, and conveys the themes of the play.
4. **Setting**: The time and place in which the drama unfolds. The setting provides context and can influence the mood and atmosphere of the play. It can also serve as a symbol for the themes or conflicts explored within the drama.
5. **Theme**: The underlying message or central idea explored in the drama. Themes often reflect broader societal issues, human emotions, moral dilemmas, and existential questions. Some common themes include love, power, justice, revenge, and the struggle between good and evil.
6. **Conflict**: The central problem or tension in the drama, which can be internal (a character's personal struggle) or external (a conflict between characters, society, or nature). The resolution of this conflict is typically the climax or conclusion of the drama.
7. **Stagecraft**: The technical elements of drama, including set design, lighting, costumes, and sound. These elements help to create the visual and auditory environment of the play, enhancing the audience's experience and understanding of the narrative.

Types of Drama:

1. **Tragedy**: A genre where the protagonist experiences a downfall, often due to a fatal flaw or external forces. Tragedies explore deep themes such as fate, death, and the consequences of human actions. Famous examples include **Shakespeare's "Macbeth"** and **Sophocles' "Oedipus Rex"**.

2. **Comedy**: A lighter genre that typically focuses on humorous situations, misunderstandings, and happy endings. Comedies often explore human folly and societal norms through satire and wit. Examples include **Shakespeare's "A Midsummer Night's Dream"** and **Molière's "Tartuffe"**.
3. **History**: Plays that focus on historical events or figures, often blending fact with artistic license to create dramatic narratives. **Shakespeare's historical plays**, such as **"Henry IV"** and **"Richard III"**, fall into this category.
4. **One-Act Play**: A shorter format of drama, usually consisting of one act with a limited number of characters and a concise plot. It often explores a specific theme or event within a limited time frame.
5. **Modern Drama**: The drama written in the 19th and 20th centuries, which often reflects contemporary issues, psychological complexity, and social realism. Playwrights like **Henrik Ibsen**, **Anton Chekhov**, and **Arthur Miller** revolutionized drama by focusing on ordinary people, internal struggles, and societal critiques.
6. **Absurdist Drama**: A genre that emerged in the 20th century, often focusing on the illogical, irrational, and meaningless aspects of human existence. Works such as **Samuel Beckett's "Waiting for Godot"** are examples of this style.

Functions of Drama:

- **Entertainment**: Drama often serves to entertain, drawing audiences into the story through engaging characters, intriguing plots, and emotional experiences.
- **Reflection of Society**: Drama provides a platform for reflecting on societal issues, human behaviors, and cultural values. Many plays critique social norms, politics, or human nature.
- **Catharsis**: Particularly in tragedies, drama allows the audience to experience a purging of emotions such as fear and pity, providing emotional release and a sense of resolution.
- **Education and Moral Instruction**: Drama has historically been used as a tool for educating audiences, promoting virtue, and offering moral lessons. Plays often challenge individuals to confront personal and societal issues, encouraging growth and understanding.

Conclusion:

Drama is a dynamic and impactful form of artistic expression that continues to evolve. Its power lies in its ability to engage audiences emotionally and intellectually through the interaction of characters, themes, and performance. Whether through the exploration of personal struggles, societal conflicts, or universal truths, drama provides a window into the complexities of the human experience.

1.4 LET US SUM UP

Drama is a literary genre that presents stories through dialogue and action, intended for performance by actors in front of an audience. It is one of the oldest and most influential forms of art, reflecting the complexities of human nature and society. Through its unique combination

of plot, characters, dialogue, and performance, drama offers both entertainment and a deep exploration of human experiences, emotions, and moral dilemmas.

Key Aspects:

1. **Plot**: The sequence of events that drives the story, often revolving around conflict and its resolution.
2. **Characters**: The individuals or groups whose actions, motivations, and conflicts propel the plot.
3. **Dialogue**: The spoken words that reveal character traits, advance the plot, and explore themes.
4. **Setting**: The time and place where the drama occurs, influencing the mood and context of the story.
5. **Themes**: The central ideas explored, such as love, power, betrayal, justice, and morality.
6. **Conflict**: The main issue or struggle that the characters face, which can be internal or external.

Major Genres:

- **Tragedy**: Centers on the downfall of the protagonist, often due to their flaws or fate.
- **Comedy**: Focuses on humor and happy resolutions, often satirizing societal norms.
- **Historical Drama**: Based on historical events or figures, blending fact with fiction.
- **Modern Drama**: Reflects contemporary issues and explores psychological and social themes.
- **One-Act Plays**: Shorter, more concise dramas with a single act.

Functions of Drama:

- **Entertainment**: Provides enjoyment and emotional engagement.
- **Reflection**: Mirrors societal issues, human nature, and personal struggles.
- **Catharsis**: Allows the audience to experience and release emotions.
- **Education**: Promotes moral lessons and encourages self-reflection.

Conclusion:

Drama, in its various forms and genres, remains a powerful and timeless medium for exploring human existence. It not only entertains but also challenges audiences to think critically about the world around them, encouraging empathy, understanding, and change. Whether in classical works or modern productions, drama continues to be an essential tool for storytelling and cultural expression.

1.5 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Objective:

By the end of the lesson, students will be able to:

- Understand the key elements of drama (plot, characters, dialogue, setting, and theme).

- Recognize different genres of drama (tragedy, comedy, historical drama, and modern drama).
- Appreciate the functions and importance of drama in literature and society.

Lesson Plan:

Introduction (10 minutes)

1. **What is Drama?**
    - Start by asking students what they know about drama. What comes to mind when they think about drama? Discuss their responses.
    - Explain that drama is a genre of literature written to be performed by actors, and it presents human experiences through dialogue and action.
    - Briefly mention its historical development, from Ancient Greece to modern-day plays.

Key Elements of Drama (20 minutes)

- **Plot**: The sequence of events in the drama. Describe how a plot typically builds from an introduction, conflict, climax, and resolution.
- **Characters**: The individuals involved in the plot. Discuss protagonists (main characters) and antagonists (those who oppose the protagonist).
- **Dialogue**: The spoken words between characters, which reveal their thoughts, feelings, and motivations.
- **Setting**: The time and place of the drama's events. Discuss how the setting can influence the mood and atmosphere of the story.
- **Theme**: The central idea or moral lesson of the play. Examples include love, revenge, or justice.
- **Conflict**: The central problem that characters must resolve. Discuss how conflict can be internal (within a character) or external (between characters or forces).

Genres of Drama (15 minutes)

- **Tragedy**: A genre that ends in sorrow or catastrophe, often focusing on a protagonist's downfall.
    - Example: **Macbeth** by William Shakespeare.
- **Comedy**: A lighter genre that emphasizes humor and usually has a happy ending.
    - Example: **A Midsummer Night's Dream** by William Shakespeare.
- **Historical Drama**: Focuses on real events and historical figures, blending facts with dramatic interpretation.
    - Example: **Richard III** by William Shakespeare.
- **Modern Drama**: Reflects contemporary issues, often focusing on the complexities of human behavior and society.
    - Example: **A Doll's House** by Henrik Ibsen.

Functions of Drama (10 minutes)

- **Entertainment**: Drama entertains by telling captivating stories.
- **Reflection**: Drama mirrors societal values, moral dilemmas, and human struggles.

- **Catharsis**: Drama helps the audience release emotions such as fear or pity.
- **Education**: Drama teaches moral lessons and promotes self-reflection and awareness.

Activity: Analyzing a Short Scene (30 minutes)
Objective:

Students will apply their understanding of drama by analyzing a short dramatic scene and identifying key elements such as characters, plot, setting, conflict, and theme.

Instructions:

1. **Choose a Short Scene from a Play** (Example: a scene from Romeo and Juliet or The Merchant of Venice).
2. **Break into Groups**:
    - Divide the class into small groups (3-4 students per group).
3. **Scene Analysis**:
    - Assign each group a short scene from the chosen play.
    - Have each group identify the following in the scene:
        - **Plot**: What is happening in the scene? What is the conflict?
        - **Characters**: Who is in the scene, and what are their roles?
        - **Setting**: Where and when does the scene take place?
        - **Theme**: What larger idea or message does the scene convey?
        - **Dialogue**: How does the dialogue reveal the characters' emotions or motivations?
4. **Group Presentation**:
    - Each group will present their analysis of the scene to the class. Encourage them to discuss how the scene contributes to the overall themes of the play.

Discussion (15 minutes)

- After the activity, facilitate a class discussion on how the elements of drama worked together to create meaning and impact.
- Ask the students to reflect on the following questions:
    - How did the setting affect the characters' behavior in the scene?
    - What role did conflict play in driving the plot forward?
    - How did the theme of the play emerge through the characters' actions and dialogue?
    - What did you learn about the function of drama in society?

Conclusion (5 minutes)

Summarize the key points discussed in the lesson:

- Drama is a powerful form of literature that uses characters, plot, dialogue, and setting to convey a message or story.
- The different genres of drama (tragedy, comedy, historical drama, and modern drama) serve different purposes, from entertaining audiences to reflecting on societal issues.
- The study of drama helps us understand human nature, societal values, and moral dilemmas.

Homework Assignment:

- Choose a favorite play (or scene from a play) and write a short reflection on how it uses the key elements of drama (plot, characters, dialogue, setting, and theme).
- Alternatively, students can be asked to read a short one-act play and analyze its structure and themes using the concepts discussed in the lesson.

This lesson plan is designed to introduce students to the basic concepts of drama and encourage them to think critically about how plays are structured and performed.

1.6 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Drama

1. **Act**: A major division in a play. Traditionally, a drama is divided into acts, each representing a particular section of the plot. Acts are often divided into scenes.
2. **Allegory**: A type of drama in which characters and events represent abstract ideas or moral qualities, often used to convey a deeper moral or philosophical meaning.
3. **Antagonist**: The character or force that opposes the protagonist, creating conflict in the story. This can be another character, society, nature, or even internal conflict within the protagonist.
4. **Character**: An individual in a drama whose actions, motivations, and development are explored throughout the play. Characters can be protagonists (main characters), antagonists, or supporting characters.
5. **Climax**: The moment of greatest tension in a drama, typically occurring near the end of the play, when the central conflict reaches its peak and begins to move towards resolution.
6. **Conflict**: The central struggle or problem in a drama. Conflict can be internal (within a character) or external (between characters or forces) and is the driving force behind the plot.
7. **Dialogue**: The spoken words of characters in a play. Dialogue serves to convey information, reveal character, and advance the plot.
8. **Dramatic Irony**: A situation in which the audience knows something that the characters do not, creating tension or humor as the characters proceed unaware of the truth.
9. **Exposition**: The part of the play that introduces the main characters, setting, and the basic situation. Exposition usually occurs at the beginning of a drama.
10. **Monologue**: A long speech delivered by a character, often expressing thoughts, emotions, or providing insight into their personality. Monologues are typically delivered alone on stage, but can also be directed toward other characters.
11. **Prologue**: An introductory section of a play that provides background information or sets the stage for the action to come. It often occurs before the first act.
12. **Protagonist**: The main character in a drama, around whom the plot revolves. The protagonist typically faces challenges or conflicts that they must overcome.

13. **Resolution**: The conclusion of a drama, where the conflict is resolved and the story reaches its final outcome.
14. **Setting**: The time and place in which the drama occurs. The setting helps establish the atmosphere and context of the play and can influence characters' behavior.
15. **Stage Directions**: Instructions in the script of a play that describe actions, movements, and emotions of the characters, as well as the setting and other technical aspects of the performance.
16. **Subplot**: A secondary storyline in a drama that runs parallel to the main plot. Subplots often support or contrast with the main plot and provide additional depth to the play.
17. **Suspense**: A feeling of uncertainty or tension created by the plot, making the audience eager to know what happens next. Suspense often arises from unresolved conflict or dramatic situations.
18. **Theme**: The central idea, message, or moral of the play. Themes are often explored through characters, dialogue, and conflict, and can address topics like love, power, revenge, justice, and human nature.
19. **Tragedy**: A genre of drama in which the protagonist experiences a downfall, often due to a flaw in their character or external forces. Tragedies often explore serious themes and evoke emotions like pity and fear.
20. **Comedy**: A genre of drama that focuses on humorous situations, often involving misunderstandings, mistaken identities, and light-hearted conflicts. Comedies typically have happy or uplifting endings.
21. **Tragic Flaw (Hamartia)**: A character trait or weakness in the protagonist that leads to their downfall in a tragedy. This flaw often contributes to the conflict and themes of the play.
22. **Catharsis**: The emotional release or purification experienced by the audience after witnessing the events of a tragedy. Catharsis allows the audience to feel relief from the emotional tension built throughout the play.
23. **Verisimilitude**: The appearance of truth or reality in a drama. It refers to the believability of the play's events, characters, and dialogue.
24. **Villain**: A character who opposes the protagonist and typically embodies evil or wrongdoing. Villains are commonly found in tragedies and other dramatic works.
25. **Comic Relief**: Humorous scenes or characters inserted into a drama to relieve tension, particularly in tragic or serious plays. Comic relief provides a contrast to the darker themes and helps balance the emotional tone.
26. **Falling Action**: The events that occur after the climax, leading to the resolution. During this part of the drama, tensions begin to ease, and the conflict starts to be resolved.
27. **Soliloquy**: A speech delivered by a character alone on stage, expressing their innermost thoughts and feelings. Soliloquies provide insight into a character's mind and often reveal their motivations or struggles.
28. **Fourth Wall**: The imaginary barrier between the stage and the audience. In some plays, characters may break the fourth wall by addressing the audience directly, which can create a sense of intimacy or dramatic effect.
29. **Denouement**: The final part of a drama, where all loose ends of the plot are tied up and any remaining questions or conflicts are resolved. It provides closure to the story.

30. **Stage**: The area where a play is performed, typically equipped with scenery, lighting, and props to create the setting for the action.

This glossary provides an overview of the key terms used in drama, helping to understand its structure, characters, themes, and various conventions.

1.7 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Here are some **discussion questions** for exploring **drama** in detail, designed to promote deeper understanding and analysis:

General Questions about Drama:

1. **What makes drama distinct from other literary genres like novels or poetry?**
   - Discuss the significance of dialogue, action, and performance in drama.
2. **How does the concept of conflict drive the narrative in a drama?**
   - Explore the different types of conflict (internal vs. external) and their impact on the plot and characters.
3. **How do the elements of setting, lighting, and stage design contribute to the meaning of a play?**
   - Analyze the role of physical space and visual components in conveying mood or themes.
4. **In what ways does drama reflect the society in which it is written?**
   - Discuss how playwrights use drama to comment on social, political, or cultural issues.
5. **What is the importance of the audience in drama? How does the interaction between the performance and the audience shape the experience?**
   - Consider how drama depends on live audiences and the dynamic between performers and spectators.

Character and Theme Questions:

6. **How do the protagonists in dramatic works evolve throughout the play?**
   - Discuss the development or downfall of characters in plays like Macbeth, Hamlet, or A Doll's House.
7. **What role do secondary characters play in reinforcing or challenging the themes of the main plot?**
   - Examine the function of supporting characters in plays such as The Merchant of Venice or She Stoops to Conquer.
8. **How does a character's tragic flaw (hamartia) lead to their downfall?**
   - Discuss examples from tragedies like Macbeth or Othello where a protagonist's flaw determines their fate.
9. **What moral or lesson is the playwright attempting to convey through the conflicts and resolution of the play?**

- Analyze how specific dramas, like A Doll's House or An Inspector Calls, address themes of morality, social responsibility, or personal transformation.

Genre-Specific Questions:

10. **What differentiates a tragedy from a comedy in dramatic works?**
    - Discuss elements such as tone, plot structure, and character arcs in genres like tragedy (Hamlet) and comedy (Twelfth Night).
11. **How do historical plays blend fact and fiction, and what purpose does this serve?**
    - Consider the use of historical figures in dramas like Julius Caesar by Shakespeare or Saint Joan by Shaw, and how historical context affects their portrayal.
12. **In what ways do modern plays address contemporary issues compared to classical dramas?**
    - Explore how modern plays like A Raisin in the Sun or Waiting for Godot tackle social issues and personal identity.
13. **How does farce, as a subgenre of comedy, use exaggerated situations for comedic effect?**
    - Analyze the elements of farce in plays such as The Importance of Being Earnest by Oscar Wilde or other absurdist comedies.

Structural and Stylistic Questions:

14. **How does the structure of a play (acts, scenes) help in building suspense or developing themes?**
    - Examine how the organization of acts and scenes in plays like The Glass Menagerie or Macbeth supports narrative development.
15. **What is the significance of soliloquies in dramatic works, and how do they deepen the audience's understanding of characters?**
    - Discuss famous soliloquies, like Hamlet's "To be or not to be," and their contribution to character development.
16. **How does the use of dramatic irony create tension or humor in a play?**
    - Analyze examples of dramatic irony in works like Oedipus Rex or The Importance of Being Earnest.

Performance and Interpretation Questions:

17. **How do different interpretations of a play affect its meaning?**
    - Discuss how performances by different directors, actors, or theater companies can alter the themes or tone of a drama.
18. **How does the format of a one-act play differ from a full-length play, and what are the advantages or challenges of each?**
    - Consider how brevity in one-act plays like The Vagina Monologues affects the exploration of themes compared to longer works.
19. **What is the role of symbolism in a dramatic work?**
    - Explore how symbols, such as objects, colors, or specific actions, convey deeper meanings in plays like Death of a Salesman or The Cherry Orchard.

20. **How do the acting and staging choices impact the audience's emotional experience?**
    - Discuss how a director's choices, from blocking to lighting to costume design, shape the emotional journey of a drama.

Cultural and Philosophical Questions:

21. **How do plays explore the human condition, and what insights can they provide into our lives?**
    - Discuss how plays like The Crucible or Waiting for Godot explore existential or philosophical questions about identity, society, and fate.
22. **How does the historical context of a play influence its themes or characters?**
    - Consider how the time period in which a play is set affects the characters' decisions and the overall message of the play.
23. **What is the role of satire in drama?**
    - Examine how playwrights use satire, such as in The Government Inspector by Gogol or The Importance of Being Earnest, to critique societal norms and politics.

Final Reflection Questions:

24. **Why do you think drama has remained a relevant and powerful form of storytelling across centuries?**
    - Reflect on the enduring appeal of drama in various cultures and time periods.
25. **How does the experience of reading a play differ from seeing it performed on stage?**
    - Consider the elements of live performance—such as the actors' interpretations, the atmosphere, and audience interaction—that enhance the dramatic experience.

These questions are designed to prompt thoughtful discussion and critical analysis of drama in all its forms, from classical works to modern productions. They can be used in classrooms, book clubs, or informal discussions to deepen the understanding of dramatic works and their significance.

1.8 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Carlson, M. (2018). Theories of the theatre: A historical and critical survey from the Greeks to the present (Expanded ed.). Cornell University Press.
2. Giesekam, G. (2018). Staging the screen: The use of film and video in theatre. Palgrave Macmillan.
3. Kershaw, B., & Nicholson, H. (Eds.). (2017). Research methods in theatre and performance. Edinburgh University Press.

4. Pavis, P. (2019). The Routledge dictionary of performance and contemporary theatre. Routledge.
5. Reinelt, J., & Roach, J. R. (Eds.). (2017). Critical theory and performance (2nd ed.). University of Michigan Press.
6. Shalson, L. (2017). Theatre & protest. Palgrave Macmillan.
7. Tompkins, J. (2019). Theatre's heterotopias: Performance and the cultural politics of space. Palgrave Macmillan.
8. Turner, C., & Behrndt, S. (2018). Dramaturgy and performance (2nd ed.). Palgrave Macmillan.
9. Wallace, C. (2018). The Cambridge introduction to tragedy. Cambridge University Press.
10. Worthen, W. B. (2020). Shakespeare, technicity, theatre. Cambridge University Press.

Suggested Books

1. Aristotle. (1996). Poetics (I. Bywater, Trans.). Dover Publications. (Original work published ca. 335 BCE)
2. Esslin, M. (2004). The theatre of the absurd. Vintage Books.
3. Holland, P., & Hughes, J. (Eds.). (2002). The Cambridge companion to modern British playwrights. Cambridge University Press.
4. Brockett, O. G., & Ball, M. (2014). The history of the theatre (11th ed.). Pearson.
5. McDonald, R. (2019). Shakespeare: A critical study. Oxford University Press.
6. Boggs, J., & Petrie, H. (2019). The Art of theatre: A concise introduction (3rd ed.). Cengage Learning.
7. Sierz, A. (2000). In-Yer-Face Theatre: British Drama Today. Faber and Faber.
8. Fischer-Lichte, E. (2008). The transformative power of performance: A new aesthetics. Routledge.

UNIT 2
TRAGEDY

Structure:

2.1 INTRODUCTION

Tragedy is a genre of drama that explores the darker aspects of human nature and the complexities of life, often focusing on themes such as suffering, fate, loss, and moral dilemmas. In a tragic play, the protagonist, often a person of high status or noble character, experiences a downfall due to a combination of personal flaws (often referred to as hamartia) and external forces. This downfall evokes feelings of pity and fear in the audience, leading to a catharsis, or emotional cleansing, as they confront the harsh realities of the human condition.

The roots of tragedy can be traced back to ancient Greek theater, with playwrights like **Aeschylus**, **Sophocles**, and **Euripides** shaping the genre. Aristotle's Poetics (4th century BCE) defined the key elements of tragedy, including the concept of catharsis, which he argued was achieved through the unfolding of tragic events. A central component of Greek tragedy is the protagonist's hamartia—a tragic flaw or error in judgment that leads to their fall from grace.

In classical tragedies, the plot often revolves around fate and the inevitable consequences of actions, with characters struggling against forces they cannot control, such as gods, destiny, or societal expectations. As the protagonist faces their downfall, they typically come to an understanding of their own mistakes or limitations, though this recognition often comes too late to prevent their tragic end.

Throughout history, tragedy evolved to reflect the changing social, political, and philosophical landscapes. In the Renaissance, **William Shakespeare** brought new dimensions to tragic characters, such as Hamlet and Macbeth, who are driven by personal ambition, guilt, or internal conflict. Tragedy became less about fate and more about personal responsibility, morality, and psychological depth.

In the modern era, tragic plays have expanded beyond the traditional format, focusing on the struggles of ordinary people and exploring themes such as alienation, existential crisis, and the failure of the individual to find meaning or purpose in life. Playwrights like **Henrik Ibsen** (A Doll's House) and **Arthur Miller** (Death of a Salesman) examined the tragedies of everyday life, where the protagonists' downfall often stems from societal pressures, personal disillusionment, or economic hardships.

Despite the evolution of the genre, tragedy remains a powerful and compelling form of storytelling, offering audiences a profound exploration of human vulnerability, the consequences of actions, and the complex nature of morality. Tragedy compels viewers to reflect on their own lives, choices, and the shared struggles of humanity.

2.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the defining characteristics and structure of tragedy as a literary genre.
2. Understand the themes and moral dilemmas commonly explored in tragic works.
3. Understand the role of tragic heroes and their significance in the narrative.
4. Understand how tragedy reflects societal values and human struggles.
5. Understand the emotional impact and cathartic purpose of tragic storytelling.

2.3 TRAGEDY

Tragedy is a genre of drama that focuses on human suffering, often culminating in a sorrowful or catastrophic conclusion. Traditionally, the protagonist in a tragedy is a person of noble stature or high position, whose actions and inherent flaws lead to a downfall. The dramatic structure of a tragedy typically follows a sequence of rising tension, a central conflict, and an inevitable resolution marked by the protagonist’s tragic end. The genre has roots in ancient Greek theater and continues to resonate in modern works.

Key Characteristics of Tragedy:

1. **Noble or High-Stature Protagonist**:
    - In classical tragedies, the protagonist often holds a high rank or noble status, making their fall from grace particularly impactful. This character is usually someone with admirable qualities, which makes their tragic fate more poignant. Examples include Hamlet in Hamlet and Macbeth in Macbeth.
2. **Hamartia (Tragic Flaw)**:
    - The protagonist’s downfall is typically caused by a fatal flaw (hamartia), which leads to a mistake or decision that sets the tragic events in motion. This flaw could be anything from excessive pride (hubris) to jealousy, ambition, or insecurity.

3. **Conflict**:
    - Tragedy often explores the protagonist's internal or external conflict. This could involve struggles against other characters, societal expectations, or the forces of fate or the gods. In Greek tragedies, the gods were often seen as playing a direct role in the fate of the characters.
4. **Catharsis**:
    - According to Aristotle, one of the central purposes of tragedy is to invoke catharsis, the emotional purging or cleansing of the audience. Through experiencing the suffering of the protagonist, the audience feels a release of emotions, particularly pity and fear, and ultimately reaches a sense of emotional relief or enlightenment.
5. **Downfall and Death**:
    - The tragic hero's journey often ends with their downfall, which may result in death, ruin, or a profound sense of loss. This resolution brings closure to the play but leaves the audience with profound reflection on the consequences of the hero's actions and flaws.
6. **Moral or Philosophical Themes**:
    - Tragedy often delves into complex themes such as fate, free will, justice, morality, and the limits of human understanding. It asks profound questions about human existence and the consequences of choices made under emotional or psychological pressure.

Historical Development of Tragedy:

- **Greek Tragedy**:
    - Greek playwrights such as **Aeschylus**, **Sophocles**, and **Euripides** laid the foundations for the genre. **Sophocles' "Oedipus Rex"** and **Aeschylus' "Agamemnon"** are iconic works that explore themes of fate, free will, and divine justice. Greek tragedies were often performed as part of religious festivals in honor of the gods.
- **Shakespearean Tragedy**:
    - William Shakespeare took tragedy to new heights with plays such as Hamlet, Macbeth, King Lear, and Othello. His tragic heroes are often flawed individuals caught in complex moral dilemmas. The psychological depth of his characters and his use of soliloquies created a new level of introspection, where the audience is invited to engage directly with the character's inner turmoil.
- **Modern Tragedy**:
    - In modern times, the traditional aristocratic protagonists of classical tragedy gave way to more relatable characters. In **Arthur Miller's "Death of a Salesman"**, the tragic hero is an ordinary man, Willy Loman, whose pursuit of the American Dream and his inability to live up to it lead to his demise. Similarly, **Henrik Ibsen's "A Doll's House"** critiques societal norms and the struggles of women in the late 19th century, focusing on personal and familial tragedy rather than fate or divine will.

Key Examples of Tragedy:

1. **Greek Tragedy**:
    - Oedipus Rex by Sophocles
    - Antigone by Sophocles
    - Agamemnon by Aeschylus
2. **Shakespearean Tragedy**:
    - Macbeth by William Shakespeare
    - Hamlet by William Shakespeare
    - King Lear by William Shakespeare
3. **Modern Tragedy**:
    - Death of a Salesman by Arthur Miller
    - A Doll's House by Henrik Ibsen
    - Long Day's Journey Into Night by Eugene O'Neill

Thematic Exploration in Tragedy:

Tragedy is a genre that allows for profound exploration of human nature. It asks essential questions about morality, fate, and the consequences of individual choices. Through the tragic hero's journey, audiences can reflect on their own lives and confront universal truths about suffering, guilt, and redemption.

In conclusion, tragedy as a genre remains relevant because it offers a unique lens through which we can explore the darker aspects of the human experience. Its focus on human flaws, moral dilemmas, and the inevitable nature of suffering encourages deep reflection on the choices we make and the consequences they may bring.

2.4 LET US SUM UP

Tragedy, as a genre of drama, explores the darker aspects of human existence, focusing on suffering, moral dilemmas, and the consequences of actions. It typically centers around a protagonist of noble stature or high rank, whose fatal flaw (hamartia) leads to their inevitable downfall. This downfall, often marked by death or ruin, is intended to evoke emotions of pity and fear in the audience, culminating in catharsis, an emotional release or purification.

Originating in ancient Greece with playwrights like **Sophocles**, **Aeschylus**, and **Euripides**, tragedy focused on the themes of fate, divine justice, and human limitations. These early works often involved conflicts between the characters and the gods or fate itself. In Shakespearean tragedies, such as Hamlet and Macbeth, the protagonists are deeply flawed individuals, and the focus shifts more to psychological and moral conflicts, exploring themes like ambition, guilt, and revenge.

In modern times, tragedy evolved to include ordinary individuals as protagonists, as seen in **Arthur Miller's "Death of a Salesman"** and **Henrik Ibsen's "A Doll's House"**.

These works address societal issues and personal struggles, expanding the genre beyond the noble and divine conflicts of classical works.

Ultimately, tragedy remains a powerful tool for exploring human nature and the consequences of our choices, providing insight into the complexities of life and the inevitability of suffering. It serves as a reminder of the fragility of human existence and the moral and philosophical dilemmas we all face.

2.5 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Objective:

By the end of this lesson, students should be able to understand the essential features of tragedy, its origins, and the evolution of the genre. They will also explore the themes and structure of a tragic play and develop the ability to analyze tragic elements in a play.

1. Introduction to Tragedy (15 minutes)

- **Definition of Tragedy**:
  Begin by explaining the concept of tragedy. Define it as a dramatic genre that portrays the downfall of a protagonist due to a combination of their own flaws (hamartia) and external forces. The downfall often leads to an emotional experience of pity and fear, with the ultimate goal of achieving catharsis.
- **Historical Context**:
  Introduce the roots of tragedy in **Greek theater**, particularly the works of **Sophocles** (e.g., Oedipus Rex), **Aeschylus**, and **Euripides**. Discuss how tragedy evolved through **Shakespearean plays** (e.g., Hamlet, Macbeth) and into modern examples (e.g., **Arthur Miller's "Death of a Salesman"**).
- **Key Characteristics**:
  1. Noble or high-status protagonist.
  2. Fatal flaw (hamartia) leading to the downfall.
  3. Conflict (internal or external).
  4. Catharsis (emotional purging for the audience).
  5. Moral or philosophical lessons.

2. Exploring Themes in Tragedy (20 minutes)

- **Common Themes**:
  - **Fate vs. Free Will**: Many tragedies focus on the struggle between characters' choices and the forces of fate.
  - **Hubris (excessive pride)**: In Greek tragedies, characters often face dire consequences due to excessive pride or arrogance.
  - **Moral Dilemmas**: Protagonists are often confronted with difficult decisions that lead to their downfall.
  - **Suffering and Redemption**: Tragedies typically explore the inevitability of suffering and sometimes hint at the possibility of redemption.

- **Discussion Points**:
    - How does a character's flaw (e.g., ambition in Macbeth, pride in Oedipus Rex) lead to their downfall?
    - How does fate play a role in shaping the tragedy?
    - What moral lessons do we learn from tragic heroes?

3. Analysis of a Tragic Play (30 minutes)

- Choose a **short tragic scene** from a well-known play (e.g., Macbeth or Oedipus Rex) for in-depth analysis.
- **Activity**:
    - **Divide the class into small groups** and assign each group a scene to analyze. Ask them to identify the protagonist's tragic flaw, the central conflict, and how the theme of fate or free will plays out in the scene.
    - **Group Discussion**: After 15-20 minutes of analysis, have each group share their findings with the class, followed by a discussion of the overall themes.

4. Activity: Writing a Tragic Scenario (25 minutes)

- **Task**: Ask students to write a short **tragic scenario** (1-2 paragraphs) where the protagonist experiences a downfall due to a fatal flaw. This scenario should include:
    1. A brief description of the protagonist and their flaw.
    2. A conflict or dilemma they face.
    3. A tragic end, leading to their downfall.
- **Reflection**: After writing, students can share their scenarios in small groups or with the class. Discuss how each protagonist's flaw led to their downfall, and whether the scenarios are faithful to the key aspects of tragedy.

5. Conclusion and Reflection (10 minutes)

- **Wrap-Up Discussion**: Conclude by revisiting the key characteristics of tragedy. Ask the class to reflect on how tragedy as a genre helps us understand complex human emotions, moral choices, and societal norms. Discuss how the genre has evolved and continues to influence literature and drama today.
- **Questions for Reflection**:
    - Why do you think tragedy resonates so deeply with audiences?
    - How does tragedy provide insights into the human condition?

Assessment:

- Evaluate students' participation in group discussions, their analysis of tragic scenes, and their ability to identify key tragic elements in a short written scenario.

Homework/Extension Activity:

- **Essay Assignment**: Write an essay on the theme of fate vs. free will in a tragic play (e.g., Macbeth or Oedipus Rex), analyzing how the protagonist's decisions contribute to their downfall.

Lesson Summary:

This lesson provides an introduction to the genre of tragedy, its key characteristics, and its evolution over time. Through analysis and creative exercises, students will gain a deeper understanding of how tragedy explores the human condition, with a focus on the protagonist's flaw and inevitable downfall.

2.6 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Terms in Tragedy

1. **Tragedy**: A dramatic genre that portrays the downfall of a protagonist due to a combination of their own flaws (hamartia) and external forces, often evoking feelings of pity and fear from the audience.
2. **Protagonist**: The main character in a tragedy, typically of noble or high status, whose downfall is central to the plot. The protagonist is often a sympathetic figure whose flaws lead to their undoing.
3. **Antagonist**: The character or force in a tragedy that opposes the protagonist, often contributing to their downfall. The antagonist can be another character, society, fate, or even the protagonist's own inner struggles.
4. **Hamartia**: The protagonist's tragic flaw or error in judgment that leads to their downfall. This flaw is often a personal characteristic such as pride, ambition, or jealousy.
5. **Hubris**: Excessive pride or arrogance, often displayed by the protagonist in Greek tragedy. Hubris usually leads to the character's downfall as they challenge divine or moral laws.
6. **Catharsis**: The emotional release or purging that the audience experiences after witnessing the tragic events. Aristotle believed that this process of cleansing through pity and fear was an essential function of tragedy.
7. **Peripeteia**: A reversal of fortune or turning point in a tragedy, where the protagonist's situation changes dramatically, often leading to their ultimate downfall. This event is typically the result of the protagonist's actions or choices.
8. **Anagnorisis**: The moment of recognition or self-realization in a tragedy, when the protagonist becomes aware of their tragic flaw or the consequences of their actions. This recognition usually occurs too late to prevent the tragic outcome.
9. **Fate**: A central theme in many tragedies, particularly in Greek drama, where the protagonist is often unable to escape their predetermined destiny, no matter how hard they struggle.
10. **Chorus**: In ancient Greek tragedy, the chorus is a group of performers who comment on the action of the play, often reflecting on the moral or philosophical themes. The chorus can serve as the voice of society, the gods, or the audience.
11. **Catharsis**: The emotional purging that the audience undergoes by experiencing the emotions of pity and fear through the tragic events of the play.

12. **Mimesis**: Imitation or representation of life, as per Aristotle's definition. In tragedy, the representation of suffering and conflict through dramatic actions is meant to evoke an emotional response from the audience.
13. **Tragic Hero**: The protagonist in a tragedy who is typically of noble birth and faces a downfall due to a tragic flaw, fate, or both. The tragic hero's journey often leads to suffering and eventual death or ruin.
14. **Soliloquy**: A speech delivered by a character alone on stage, revealing their innermost thoughts and feelings. Soliloquies are often used in tragedies to explore the protagonist's internal conflict.
15. **Climactic Structure**: The structure of a tragedy in which the plot builds to a final crisis or turning point, followed by the protagonist's inevitable downfall. The action typically escalates toward this moment of crisis.
16. **Dramatic Irony**: A situation in which the audience knows something that the characters do not, heightening the sense of tragedy as the audience anticipates the inevitable tragic outcome.
17. **Nemesis**: The divine retribution or punishment that befalls the protagonist for their tragic flaw or actions. In many tragedies, nemesis is a consequence of the protagonist's hubris or defiance of fate.
18. **Allegory**: A narrative or description that conveys a deeper moral or philosophical message, often found in tragic works. Tragedy can serve as an allegory for human existence, societal values, or the consequences of individual choices.
19. **Tragic Irony**: A type of irony in which the outcome of the events is contrary to the expectations of both the characters and the audience, usually leading to a tragic conclusion.
20. **Exposition**: The part of a tragedy that sets up the background and introduces the characters, setting, and main conflicts. The exposition usually occurs at the beginning of the play.
21. **Denouement**: The final resolution or conclusion of a tragedy, where loose ends are tied up and the consequences of the protagonist's actions are revealed, often leading to their downfall or death.
22. **Stasimon**: A choral ode or song in Greek tragedy, sung by the chorus after a dramatic episode, often reflecting on the events of the play and providing commentary on the moral or philosophical issues raised.
23. **Fate vs. Free Will**: A recurring theme in many tragedies, where characters struggle between their own decisions and the forces of fate or destiny, often leading to their downfall. This tension between fate and free will is central to the moral and philosophical inquiry of the tragedy.
24. **Moral Lesson**: Tragedies often convey a moral or ethical lesson, teaching the audience about the consequences of particular actions or flaws, such as the dangers of unchecked ambition, pride, or ignorance.
25. **Pathos**: The quality in a tragedy that evokes feelings of sympathy or pity from the audience, particularly toward the suffering of the protagonist. Pathos is one of the key emotional responses that contribute to the catharsis.

This glossary provides key terms that are essential to understanding the structure, themes, and mechanics of tragedy. These terms can help you analyze and appreciate the deep emotional and philosophical aspects of tragic drama.

2.7 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

General Discussion Questions:

1. **What is the role of hamartia (tragic flaw) in shaping the protagonist's downfall?**
   How does the protagonist's flaw influence their decisions and contribute to their fate?
2. **How does catharsis function in a tragedy?**
   What purpose does the audience's emotional purging serve in relation to the plot and the characters?
3. **What is the significance of fate in Greek tragedies like Oedipus Rex or Antigone?**
   Can a tragic hero avoid their fate? How does the tension between free will and fate contribute to the tragedy?
4. **How do different tragic heroes compare?**
   How is the tragic flaw of a character like Macbeth different from that of Oedipus or Hamlet? Do modern tragedies still feature these same types of flaws?
5. **In what ways does tragedy explore the concept of moral responsibility?**
   Can a character be held morally responsible for their downfall if it is caused by external forces like fate, society, or other characters?
6. **How does the concept of hubris contribute to the tragic downfall of many protagonists in classical tragedies?**
   Can hubris exist in modern tragedies, or is it more specific to Greek tragedies?
7. **How do modern tragedies differ from ancient ones in terms of themes, character development, and societal implications?**
   Do modern tragedies focus more on individualism, societal pressures, or psychological conflict?
8. **What role do secondary characters play in a tragedy?**
   Are they mere foils for the protagonist, or do they have an important impact on the tragic outcome?
9. **What is the significance of anagnorisis (recognition) in a tragedy?**
   How does a character's moment of realization affect the audience's understanding of their downfall?
10. **What is the importance of the chorus in Greek tragedies, and how does it relate to the themes of the play?**
    Does the chorus serve a similar function in modern tragic works?

Character and Theme-based Discussion Questions:

1. **In Macbeth, how does ambition drive the tragic hero to ruin?**
   Can ambition be considered a tragic flaw in modern society as well?
2. **How does Oedipus' inability to avoid his fate add to the tragedy of the story?**
   Does Oedipus ever act freely, or is he always bound by fate?

3. **Discuss the tragic elements of Hamlet. How do Hamlet's indecision and existential thoughts contribute to the tragedy?**
   Is Hamlet a tragic hero, or is he a victim of circumstances?
4. **In Death of a Salesman, how does Willy Loman's struggle with the American Dream lead to his downfall?**
   Does Willy's personal flaw parallel that of classical tragic heroes, or is it more of a commentary on modern society?
5. **What does the ending of The Glass Menagerie reveal about the nature of tragedy in a domestic setting?**
   How does the play explore the theme of personal sacrifice and the failure of dreams?
6. **In Antigone, is Antigone's defiance of King Creon a tragic act of free will, or is she simply fulfilling her duty to the gods?**
   How does her conflict with Creon contribute to the overall tragic outcome?
7. **How does the downfall of Arthur Miller's "The Crucible" characters reflect societal influences in addition to personal flaws?**
   Can the tragedy in this play be fully attributed to individual actions, or does it also stem from societal hysteria and injustice?
8. **In modern tragedies, do protagonists face their downfall alone, or are they influenced by their relationships with others?**
   How does the relationship between protagonist and antagonist function in modern tragic works?

Philosophical and Literary Discussion Questions:

1. **Is there such a thing as a just tragedy?**
   Do all tragedies have an element of injustice, or can a tragic hero's fall be seen as a natural and justified consequence of their actions?
2. **What role does the moral lesson in tragedy play in the audience's experience?**
   Should the downfall of the protagonist offer a clear moral lesson, or is it more valuable as an exploration of complex human experiences?
3. **How does tragedy encourage reflection on human nature?**
   Do tragedies show humanity as fundamentally flawed, or do they offer hope in the form of moral growth and self-awareness?
4. **How does the audience's understanding of the tragic hero's flaw influence the emotional experience of the tragedy?**
   Should the audience sympathize with the hero's actions, or are they meant to learn from the hero's mistakes?
5. **Is the downfall of the tragic hero inevitable, or is it the result of specific, avoidable choices?**
   How do different interpretations of the tragic hero's fate affect the way we view responsibility and morality?

Conclusion Questions:

1. **Why do you think tragedy remains a relevant genre in modern literature and theater?**

Does it still serve the purpose of emotional purging (catharsis), or has it evolved into a way of addressing contemporary social and personal issues?

2. **Can tragedy be an optimistic genre, or is it inherently pessimistic?** What are the potential benefits of experiencing tragedy as an audience member?

These discussion questions can stimulate critical thinking and deeper analysis of the elements of tragedy, helping students explore the complexities of human nature, moral responsibility, fate, and the dramatic structure that defines the genre.

2.8 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Carlson, M. (2018). Theories of the theatre: A historical and critical survey from the Greeks to the present (Expanded ed.). Cornell University Press.
2. Giesekam, G. (2018). Staging the screen: The use of film and video in theatre. Palgrave Macmillan.
3. Kershaw, B., & Nicholson, H. (Eds.). (2017). Research methods in theatre and performance. Edinburgh University Press.
4. Pavis, P. (2019). The Routledge dictionary of performance and contemporary theatre. Routledge.
5. Reinelt, J., & Roach, J. R. (Eds.). (2017). Critical theory and performance (2nd ed.). University of Michigan Press.
6. Shalson, L. (2017). Theatre & protest. Palgrave Macmillan.
7. Tompkins, J. (2019). Theatre's heterotopias: Performance and the cultural politics of space. Palgrave Macmillan.
8. Turner, C., & Behrndt, S. (2018). Dramaturgy and performance (2nd ed.). Palgrave Macmillan.
9. Wallace, C. (2018). The Cambridge introduction to tragedy. Cambridge University Press.
10. Worthen, W. B. (2020). Shakespeare, technicity, theatre. Cambridge University Press.

Suggested Books

1. Aristotle. (1996). Poetics (I. Bywater, Trans.). Dover Publications. (Original work published ca. 335 BCE)
2. Knight, G. W. (2018). The Wheel of Fire: Interpretations of Shakespeare's Tragedies. Routledge.
3. Bradley, A. C. (1991). Shakespearean Tragedy: Lectures on Hamlet, Othello, King Lear, and Macbeth. Macmillan.
4. Bloom, H. (2009). Shakespeare: The Invention of the Human. Riverhead Books.
5. Nussbaum, M. C. (2001). The Fragility of Goodness: Luck and Ethics in Greek Tragedy and Philosophy. Cambridge University Press.
6. Lloyd, M. (2018). Tragedy and the Idea of Modernity. Cambridge University Press.

UNIT 3
COMEDY

Structure:

3.1 INTRODUCTION

Comedy is a broad and diverse genre of drama that seeks to entertain and amuse its audience, often through humor, exaggerated situations, witty dialogue, and clever characterizations. Unlike tragedy, which typically centers on serious, somber, or sorrowful themes, comedy focuses on light-hearted, often exaggerated scenarios that ultimately lead to a happy resolution. The key feature of comedy is its ability to provide an escape from reality, offering joy and laughter while still reflecting on human nature and social dynamics.

The roots of comedy can be traced back to ancient Greek theater, where playwrights like Aristophanes created comedic works that mocked social, political, and cultural norms. Over time, comedy evolved into various forms and sub-genres, from farce and slapstick to romantic comedies and satirical plays.

Characteristics of Comedy:

1. **Humor**: Central to comedy, humor can come from clever wordplay, mistaken identities, slapstick, or absurd situations. The aim is to provoke laughter and create enjoyment.
2. **Exaggeration**: Comedies often feature exaggerated characters or scenarios that play on the absurdity of real life. These exaggerated elements are meant to be absurd, highlighting the comedic aspects of human nature and society.
3. **Happy Ending**: Most comedies culminate in a positive resolution, where misunderstandings are cleared up, characters find happiness, or societal norms are restored. This contrasts with tragedies, which often end in death or catastrophe.
4. **Mistaken Identity and Disguises**: Many comedies revolve around misunderstandings or mistaken identities, often leading to humorous situations. Characters might disguise themselves or be confused for someone else, resulting in comedic twists and turns.

5. **Social Commentary**: While primarily entertaining, comedy can also offer sharp insights into society, politics, and human behavior. Satirical comedies often highlight social flaws, making fun of authority figures or societal norms.
6. **Character Archetypes**: Comedies frequently feature recurring character types, such as the witty servant, the bumbling fool, the young lovers, the scheming villain, or the overbearing authority figure. These archetypes help create familiar, predictable situations that allow for comedic tension and resolution.
7. **Verbal Wit**: Comedies often emphasize clever dialogue and puns, where the quick exchange of words adds to the humor. Characters might engage in witty repartee, misunderstandings, or wordplay, creating comic tension.

History of Comedy:

- **Ancient Greek Comedy**: Comedy in ancient Greece was largely associated with the works of Aristophanes, who wrote satirical and often political plays like Lysistrata and The Clouds. These works critiqued the society and politics of Athens while using humor to entertain.
- **Shakespearean Comedy**: William Shakespeare's comedies, such as A Midsummer Night's Dream, Twelfth Night, and Much Ado About Nothing, are notable for their complex characters, mistaken identities, witty dialogue, and joyful resolutions. Shakespeare's comedies often explore themes of love, identity, and social order, all framed in a comedic context.
- **Restoration Comedy**: During the English Restoration period (17th century), comedy took a more sophisticated and often risqué turn, with playwrights like William Congreve and Richard Sheridan crafting plays that focused on witty social satire, sexual politics, and class distinctions.
- **Modern Comedy**: In the 19th and 20th centuries, comedy evolved further, embracing new forms like slapstick, farce, stand-up comedy, and situational comedy (sitcoms). Modern comedies often use absurd situations, misunderstandings, and character-driven humor to address contemporary social issues.

Types of Comedy:

1. **Farce**: A type of comedy that relies on exaggerated situations, improbable events, and physical humor. Farce often involves rapid pacing, misunderstandings, and chaotic events. Examples include The Importance of Being Earnest by Oscar Wilde.
2. **Satire**: Comedy that uses humor to critique or expose the flaws in society, politics, or human nature. Satire can be biting and serious, often using wit to provoke thought as well as laughter. Examples include The Daily Show or works like Animal Farm by George Orwell.
3. **Slapstick**: A form of comedy that relies on physical humor, often involving exaggerated, improbable actions such as people tripping, falling, or being hit with objects. Classic examples include Charlie Chaplin's films and The Three Stooges.
4. **Romantic Comedy**: A sub-genre of comedy that focuses on the romantic relationships between characters, often involving misunderstandings or obstacles that are

humorously overcome. Examples include films like When Harry Met Sally and plays like Twelfth Night by Shakespeare.

5. **Dark Comedy**: This type of comedy explores taboo subjects, often blending humor with tragic or uncomfortable situations. It is sometimes used to highlight the absurdity of life, death, and human suffering. Examples include Dr. Strangelove and The Book of Mormon.

Importance of Comedy:

Comedy plays a vital role in literature, theater, and cinema by offering a platform to explore human behavior, societal norms, and relationships through humor. It serves as both entertainment and critique, often allowing audiences to laugh at themselves and the world around them. Comedies also have the power to provide catharsis, much like tragedies, but in a more uplifting and enjoyable way. By using laughter as a vehicle for deeper insight, comedy can reflect both the absurdity and the joy of life.

In summary, comedy is a genre that thrives on its ability to entertain, provoke laughter, and offer social commentary. Whether through witty dialogue, exaggerated characters, or absurd situations, comedy has the unique ability to reflect and shape the human experience.

3.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the key elements and structure of comedy as a literary and theatrical genre.
2. Understand how humor is created through language, character, and situations.
3. Understand the role of comedy in reflecting and critiquing societal norms and behaviors.
4. Understand the different types of comedic styles, such as satire, farce, and parody.
5. Understand the purpose of comedy in providing entertainment and promoting social commentary.

3.3 COMEDY

Comedy is a dramatic genre that aims to entertain and amuse the audience, often through humor, exaggerated situations, and witty dialogue. Unlike tragedy, which deals with serious or sorrowful themes, comedy focuses on lighter, more humorous content, and usually ends with a positive resolution. While primarily intended to entertain, comedy can also provide sharp commentary on social, political, and human issues.

Key Features of Comedy:

1. **Humor**: The central element of comedy is humor, which can arise from clever wordplay, absurd situations, misunderstandings, or slapstick antics. The primary goal is to provoke laughter and amusement.
2. **Exaggeration**: Comedy often involves exaggerated characters, situations, or behaviors that stretch reality to a ridiculous degree. This exaggeration highlights the absurdity of human nature or society.
3. **Happy Ending**: Unlike tragedies, comedies typically conclude with a happy or satisfying resolution. Conflicts are resolved, misunderstandings are cleared up, and characters often find happiness or unity.
4. **Mistaken Identity and Disguises**: Many comedies involve characters who are mistaken for someone else, or who disguise themselves, leading to humorous confusion. These mistaken identities often create dramatic irony, where the audience knows more than the characters.
5. **Social Commentary**: Comedies often reflect and critique social, political, or cultural norms. Through satire or parody, comedy exposes flaws in society and human behavior in a lighthearted way.
6. **Character Archetypes**: Comedy frequently employs recognizable character types, such as the clever servant, the bumbling fool, the romantic lead, or the overbearing authority figure. These archetypes help create predictable, yet entertaining scenarios.
7. **Witty Dialogue**: Sharp, quick, and witty exchanges between characters are a hallmark of comedy. The verbal sparring or repartee adds to the entertainment value and showcases the intelligence of the characters.

Types of Comedy:

1. **Farce**: A highly exaggerated, physical form of comedy that often involves improbable situations, mistaken identities, and absurd events. Farce relies on slapstick and fast-paced action to keep the audience laughing.
2. **Satire**: A comedic genre that uses humor, irony, and ridicule to criticize and expose the flaws of society, individuals, or institutions. Satirical works often tackle political or social issues with sharp wit. Example: Animal Farm by George Orwell.
3. **Slapstick**: A form of comedy based on physical humor and exaggerated action, such as characters falling, tripping, or engaging in absurd activities. Slapstick comedy is typically very visual and physical. Classic examples include Charlie Chaplin's films or The Three Stooges.
4. **Romantic Comedy**: Focused on the romantic relationships between characters, this subgenre involves humorous situations surrounding love, often featuring misunderstandings, conflicts, or obstacles that are humorously resolved.
5. **Dark Comedy**: Also known as black comedy, this subgenre uses humor to address serious, taboo, or uncomfortable subjects like death, suffering, or social injustice. It blends the tragic and the comic to provoke thought and laughter. Examples include Dr. Strangelove and The Book of Mormon.

History of Comedy:

- **Ancient Greek Comedy**: The origins of comedy can be traced to ancient Greece, with playwrights like Aristophanes using humor to satirize political leaders, social customs, and cultural issues. Plays like Lysistrata and The Clouds are famous examples of Greek comedy.
- **Shakespearean Comedy**: William Shakespeare's comedies, such as A Midsummer Night's Dream, Twelfth Night, and Much Ado About Nothing, are rich in wit, wordplay, and mistaken identities. His works often explore themes of love, marriage, and the absurdity of social conventions.
- **Restoration Comedy**: In the late 17th century, English Restoration comedies, like those by William Congreve and Richard Sheridan, became known for their sophisticated humor, wit, and sharp social commentary. These plays often critiqued the mores of the aristocracy, especially around sexual politics and class distinctions.
- **Modern Comedy**: In the 19th and 20th centuries, comedy continued to evolve with the rise of film and television. Modern comedies include everything from slapstick and farce (e.g., The Pink Panther) to witty dialogue-driven comedies (e.g., The Big Bang Theory).

Comedy in Literature and Drama:

- **Shakespeare's Contribution**: William Shakespeare's comedies are among the most enduring in world literature. His works often include themes of love, mistaken identities, and gender roles, with comedies like Twelfth Night and As You Like It remaining popular for their wit and engaging characters.
- **Modern Playwrights**: In addition to the classics, modern playwrights like Oscar Wilde (The Importance of Being Earnest) and George Bernard Shaw (Pygmalion) have crafted works that mix sharp dialogue with humor and social criticism.

Significance of Comedy:

Comedy is not just a means of entertainment; it can offer deep insights into human nature and society. Through laughter, comedy often brings attention to the absurdities of life, social norms, and the human condition. It can challenge authority, expose human flaws, and even propose solutions to societal issues—all while entertaining the audience. The genre's flexibility allows it to evolve and remain relevant across different cultures and eras, making it one of the most enduring forms of entertainment in both theater and literature.

3.4 LET US SUM UP

The **summary of comedy** revolves around its essence as a literary and theatrical genre. Here's a concise outline:

Definition:

Comedy is a genre of literature, drama, and performance that aims to entertain and provoke laughter. It often involves humorous scenarios, lighthearted storytelling, and satirical undertones, highlighting human follies or absurdities.

Key Features:

1. **Humor**: Central to comedy, with elements like wit, wordplay, slapstick, and irony.
2. **Character Dynamics**: Features exaggerated characters or archetypes whose flaws or eccentricities create amusing situations.
3. **Conflict and Resolution**: Often based on misunderstandings, mistaken identities, or trivial conflicts that resolve happily.
4. **Themes**: Examines human relationships, societal norms, and everyday life with a light-hearted perspective.
5. **Subgenres**: Includes romantic comedy, satire, farce, parody, and black comedy.

Importance:

- Provides entertainment and relief from life's challenges.
- Offers social commentary by humorously critiquing customs, politics, and human nature.
- Fosters communal bonding through shared laughter.

In plays, such as those by Aristophanes, Shakespeare, or Molière, comedy often juxtaposes chaos and order, concluding with harmony or celebration.

3.5 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives for Comedy:

1. **Understanding Comedy:**
    - Define and identify the key features of comedy as a literary and dramatic genre.
    - Explore the historical evolution of comedy from classical to modern times.
2. **Analyzing Themes and Characters:**
    - Examine how comedy reflects human behavior, societal norms, and cultural values.
    - Analyze character archetypes, conflicts, and resolutions in comedic works.
3. **Appreciating Humor:**
    - Understand the different types of humor, such as irony, satire, slapstick, and parody.
    - Recognize how comedic elements are used to entertain and provide social critique.
4. **Creative Engagement:**
    - Foster creativity by encouraging students to craft their own comedic scripts, stories, or performances.
    - Build confidence and teamwork through group activities and performances.

Activities for Teaching Comedy:

1. **Discussion and Analysis:**

- Choose a comedic play, film, or short story (e.g., Shakespeare's A Midsummer Night's Dream or a modern sitcom).
- Discuss themes, character traits, and how humor is crafted in the work.

2. **Improvisation Games:**
   - Conduct improv sessions where students create humorous scenarios on the spot.
   - Example prompts: "A misunderstanding at a restaurant" or "Two characters meet at a costume party."
3. **Role-Playing:**
   - Assign students roles from a comedic play and have them act out key scenes.
   - Focus on delivery, timing, and physical comedy.
4. **Write Your Own Comedy:**
   - Have students write a short comedic dialogue or scene using techniques like irony, pun, or exaggeration.
   - Encourage peer feedback and constructive critique.
5. **Compare and Contrast:**
   - Compare a classical comedy with a modern one (e.g., Aristophanes vs. a contemporary sitcom).
   - Discuss how humor and societal themes have evolved over time.
6. **Comedy through Art:**
   - Illustrate or storyboard a comedic scene.
   - Use visual elements like exaggerated facial expressions or absurd situations to convey humor.
7. **Reflection Activity:**
   - Ask students to write a reflection on how comedy influences their perspective on everyday life.
   - Discuss how humor can be a tool for resilience and connection.

These lessons and activities can make studying comedy both engaging and educational, encouraging students to appreciate its timeless appeal.

3.6 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Comedy

1. **Absurdity**
   - Humor arising from illogical or nonsensical situations, characters, or dialogue.
2. **Caricature**
   - An exaggerated portrayal of a character, emphasizing their flaws or peculiarities for comedic effect.
3. **Farce**
   - A subgenre of comedy characterized by exaggerated situations, physical humor, and improbable events.
4. **Irony**

- A literary device where the intended meaning contrasts with the literal meaning, often used for humor or satire.

5. **Parody**
   - A humorous imitation of a serious work, style, or genre, highlighting its absurdities or flaws.
6. **Pun**
   - A play on words where similar-sounding or multiple-meaning words create humor.
7. **Satire**
   - A comedic style that uses wit, irony, or sarcasm to criticize human vices, institutions, or society.
8. **Slapstick**
   - A form of physical comedy involving exaggerated, often violent actions like falls, slaps, or collisions.
9. **Wit**
   - The ability to make clever, amusing remarks or observations, often showcasing intelligence and quick thinking.
10. **Exaggeration**
    - Overstating or amplifying a trait, situation, or behavior to create humor.
11. **Humor**
    - The quality of being amusing or entertaining, often through jokes, funny situations, or wordplay.
12. **Subversion**
    - Flipping expectations or societal norms to create humor and surprise.
13. **Comic Relief**
    - A humorous scene or character in a serious work, intended to provide a break from tension.
14. **Misunderstanding**
    - A comedic trope where confusion or misinterpretation leads to humorous outcomes.
15. **Double Entendre**
    - A statement with two meanings, one of which is often risqué or humorous.
16. **Punchline**
    - The final, often surprising or funny line in a joke or comedic narrative.
17. **Mockery**
    - Ridiculing someone or something in a humorous or satirical manner.
18. **Anecdote**
    - A short, amusing story used to entertain or illustrate a point.
19. **Comedy of Manners**
    - A subgenre focusing on social conventions, etiquette, and behaviors, often highlighting hypocrisy or pretension.
20. **Ridicule**
    - The act of making someone or something appear foolish through humor or derision.

21. **Hyperbole**
    - Extreme exaggeration used to create a comedic or dramatic effect.
22. **Incongruity**
    - Humor arising from the mismatch between expectations and reality.
23. **One-Liner**
    - A concise, witty remark or joke delivered in a single sentence.
24. **Dark Comedy**
    - A subgenre that finds humor in serious, taboo, or grim subjects.
25. **Overstatement**
    - Making something seem more significant or dramatic than it really is for humorous effect.

This glossary can serve as a foundational reference for understanding the elements and techniques that define comedy.

3.7 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Discussion Questions About Comedy

1. **Understanding Comedy:**
    - What is the purpose of comedy in literature and performance?
    - How does comedy differ from other genres like tragedy or drama?
2. **Themes and Messages:**
    - How does comedy reflect societal values and human behavior?
    - Can comedy effectively critique societal norms or politics? Provide examples.
    - What moral or ethical boundaries, if any, should comedy observe?
3. **Characters and Humor:**
    - Why are flawed or exaggerated characters often used in comedy?
    - How do misunderstandings and mistaken identities create humor in a story?
    - Discuss the importance of timing and delivery in creating comedic moments.
4. **Types of Comedy:**
    - How do subgenres like satire, farce, and parody differ in their approach to humor?
    - Compare and contrast the use of humor in classical comedies (e.g., Aristophanes, Shakespeare) versus modern sitcoms or stand-up performances.
    - Which type of comedy resonates with you the most, and why?
5. **Cultural and Historical Context:**
    - How has comedy evolved over time?
    - Are there universal elements of comedy, or is humor shaped by culture and era?
    - How do different cultures approach comedy? Provide examples from diverse traditions.
6. **Comedy in Practice:**
    - What makes a joke or comedic situation funny?
    - How does the audience's perspective affect their reaction to humor?

- Have you ever encountered a comedic work that didn't make you laugh? Why do you think that was?

7. **Ethics and Limits of Comedy:**
   - Should comedians or writers avoid certain topics? Why or why not?
   - How do modern discussions around political correctness influence comedy?
   - Can comedy go too far? Discuss examples where humor may have crossed a line.
8. **Impact of Comedy:**
   - How can comedy be a tool for healing or resilience during difficult times?
   - In what ways can comedy bring people together?
   - Do you think comedy is more impactful when it has a serious underlying message? Why or why not?
9. **Personal Experiences:**
   - What is the funniest piece of comedy you've ever experienced? Why did it resonate with you?
   - Have you ever tried to create something comedic? What challenges did you face?
   - Can you think of a time when comedy helped you view a situation differently?
10. **Creative Exploration:**
    - If you were to write or perform a comedy, what themes or topics would you explore?
    - How would you incorporate different elements of humor (e.g., irony, slapstick, satire) into your work?

These questions encourage deeper engagement with the genre, promoting critical thinking and personal reflection on the role of comedy in art and life.

3.8 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Bordas, C. (2023). The Material. Farrar, Straus and Giroux.
2. Wilkie, I. (Ed.). (2019). The Routledge comedy studies reader. Routledge.
3. Rossing, J. P., & Holcomb, C. (2020). Critical perspectives on comedy in the age of Trump. Palgrave Macmillan.
4. Krefting, R. (2017). All joking aside: American humor and its discontents. Johns Hopkins University Press.
5. Weems, S. (2014). Ha!: The science of when we laugh and why. Basic Books.
6. Vorhaus, J. (1994). The comic toolbox: How to be funny even if you're not. Silman-James Press.
7. Murray, L. (2010). Teach yourself stand-up comedy. McGraw-Hill.
8. Carter, J. (2001). The comedy bible: From stand-up to sitcom--the comedy writer's ultimate "how to" guide. Simon & Schuster.
9. Weems, S. (2014). Ha!: The science of when we laugh and why. Basic Books.

10. Vorhaus, J. (1994). The comic toolbox: How to be funny even if you're not. Silman-James Press.

Suggested Books

1. Aristotle. (1996). Poetics (I. Bywater, Trans.). Dover Publications. (Original work published ca. 335 BCE)
2. Esslin, M. (2010). Theatre of the Absurd. Penguin Classics.
3. Hutto, C. P. (2018). Comedy and the Feminine: Gendered Perspectives on Laughter. Routledge.
4. Fergusson, F. (1987). Shakespeare's Comedies. Macmillan.
5. Bakhtin, M. M. (1984). Rabelais and His World (H. Iswolsky, Trans.). Indiana University Press.
6. Booth, W. C. (1974). A Rhetoric of Irony. University of Chicago Press.
7. Vaughan, V. (2006). Comedy and Gender: Reframing the Political through Laughter. Routledge.
8. Cohen, R. (Ed.) (2009). The Comic in English Renaissance Drama. Cambridge University Press.

UNIT 4
HISTORICAL PLAY

Structure:

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Introduction to Historical Plays

A **historical play** is a dramatic work that draws inspiration from real historical events, figures, or periods. This genre blends historical facts with artistic creativity, offering audiences a lens to explore the past while reflecting on timeless human experiences.

Key Features of Historical Plays:

1. **Focus on Real Events and Figures:**
   - Historical plays often depict significant events, political struggles, or the lives of influential leaders and personalities.
   - Examples include William Shakespeare's Henry V and Julius Caesar or Bertolt Brecht's The Life of Galileo.
2. **Blend of Fact and Fiction:**
   - While rooted in history, playwrights take creative liberties to enhance drama, explore character motivations, or emphasize moral and thematic elements.
3. **Exploration of Themes:**
   - Common themes include power, leadership, betrayal, war, and the consequences of human actions.
   - They also reflect the political and social context of the time when they were written or set.
4. **Cultural and Historical Context:**
   - Historical plays often provide insight into the values, conflicts, and ideologies of the depicted era, helping modern audiences connect with history in an engaging way.
5. **Timeless Appeal:**
   - Despite being set in the past, these plays address universal questions about humanity, morality, and society, making them relevant across generations.

Purpose and Significance:

- **Educational Value:** Offers an immersive way to learn about history and understand the complexities of past societies.
- **Reflection on the Present:** Highlights parallels between historical and contemporary issues, encouraging audiences to draw lessons from history.
- **Emotional and Intellectual Engagement:** By dramatizing historical events, these plays evoke empathy, provoke thought, and spark discussions about leadership, ethics, and human nature.

Examples of Famous Historical Plays:

1. **Shakespeare's Historical Cycle** (Henry IV, Henry V, Richard III): Examines English history through the lens of kingship, power, and national identity.
2. **Sophocles' Oedipus Rex** (Though mythological, it reflects ancient Greek cultural values and leadership).
3. **Arthur Miller's The Crucible**: A dramatization of the Salem Witch Trials, serving as an allegory for McCarthyism.
4. **Friedrich Schiller's Mary Stuart**: Chronicles the political and personal struggles of Mary, Queen of Scots.

Historical plays remain a powerful genre that bridges the past and present, offering rich narratives, complex characters, and profound insights into the human condition.

4.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the significance of historical plays in depicting key events and figures from the past.
2. Understand how historical context influences the themes and characters of the play.
3. Understand the blending of fact and fiction in dramatizing historical narratives.
4. Understand the role of historical plays in shaping cultural and national identity.
5. Understand the impact of historical plays on audiences' perception of history and its relevance today.

4.3 HISTORICAL PLAY

Historical Context of Historical Plays

The term "historical play" refers to a genre of drama that dramatizes events from history. Its origins, development, and influence across different eras reflect how society uses theater to understand and interpret historical narratives. Let's explore the historical evolution of historical plays:

Origins of Historical Plays

1. **Ancient Beginnings:**
    - In ancient Greece, playwrights like **Aeschylus** and **Sophocles** often incorporated historical or semi-historical elements in their works, blending mythology with real events to explore human nature and societal values.
    - Roman playwrights, such as **Seneca**, sometimes included historical themes, particularly in tragedies.
2. **Medieval Theater:**
    - The Middle Ages saw the rise of **morality plays** and **mystery cycles**, which dramatized biblical stories and the lives of saints, offering moral lessons intertwined with historical and religious narratives.
3. **Renaissance Period:**
    - Historical plays flourished during the Renaissance, particularly in England with the works of **William Shakespeare**.
    - Shakespeare's history plays, such as Henry IV and Richard III, captured the political and social struggles of English monarchy, intertwining historical fact with artistic embellishment.

Development of Historical Plays

1. **17th-18th Century:**
    - The genre expanded beyond national history to explore global historical events and figures.
    - **French playwrights** like **Voltaire** and **Racine** dramatized European history, often focusing on themes of power and morality.
2. **19th Century:**
    - The Romantic period saw a resurgence of historical drama with plays emphasizing heroism, revolution, and national identity.
    - **Friedrich Schiller** in Germany wrote extensively about historical figures like Mary Stuart and Joan of Arc.
3. **Modern and Postmodern Era:**
    - Historical plays in the 20th and 21st centuries often reflect on the implications of historical events on contemporary society.
    - **Arthur Miller's The Crucible** (1953) serves as an allegory for McCarthyism, illustrating how history can repeat itself in different forms.
    - Postmodern plays like **Tom Stoppard's Arcadia** experiment with historical narratives and their relationship with the present.

Historical Importance of Historical Plays

- **Preservation of History:** Historical plays immortalize significant events and personalities, ensuring their legacy is remembered.
- **Cultural Reflection:** They reflect the concerns, ideologies, and values of the time in which they were written.

- **Commentary on Society:** Many historical plays critique the use and abuse of power, the cycles of history, and the consequences of human actions.

Significance Today

Historical plays continue to resonate with audiences because they provide a bridge between past and present, allowing people to examine historical events through a humanistic lens. Whether in a traditional format or reimagined for modern audiences, historical plays remain a cornerstone of theatrical storytelling.

4.4 LET US SUM UP

A **historical play** is a dramatic genre that portrays real events, characters, or periods from history, blending fact with artistic interpretation. These plays are significant for their ability to educate, entertain, and provoke thought about the past and its relevance to the present.

Key Points:

1. **Definition and Purpose:**
   - Depicts historical events and figures, often dramatized for theatrical impact.
   - Aims to educate, reflect societal values, and explore universal themes like power, morality, and human nature.
2. **Features:**
   - Focus on real-life events or personalities.
   - Use of creative liberties to enhance storytelling.
   - Exploration of themes like leadership, war, betrayal, and identity.
3. **Historical Evolution:**
   - Rooted in ancient Greek and Roman dramas, evolving through the Renaissance with notable contributions by William Shakespeare (Henry V, Julius Caesar).
   - Later enriched by Romantic dramatists like Friedrich Schiller and modern playwrights like Arthur Miller.
4. **Cultural and Social Relevance:**
   - Reflects the political and social concerns of the era in which it was written.
   - Offers a platform for critiquing contemporary issues through historical allegory.
5. **Examples:**
   - Henry IV and Richard III by William Shakespeare (English history).
   - The Crucible by Arthur Miller (Salem Witch Trials as a metaphor for McCarthyism).
   - Mary Stuart by Friedrich Schiller (European politics and personal conflict).
6. **Significance:**
   - Serves as a bridge between the past and present, helping audiences draw lessons from history.
   - Encourages critical thinking about human actions, leadership, and societal structures.

Conclusion:

Historical plays remain timeless due to their ability to connect audiences with the past while addressing enduring human themes. They offer insight into history's complexities and challenge us to reflect on its impact on our lives today.

4.5 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives for Historical Plays

1. **Understanding Historical Plays:**
    - Define and identify the characteristics of historical plays.
    - Differentiate historical plays from other dramatic genres like tragedy or comedy.
2. **Analyzing Themes and Characters:**
    - Explore how historical events and figures are portrayed and interpreted.
    - Examine themes such as power, leadership, morality, and conflict.
3. **Critical Thinking and Reflection:**
    - Discuss how historical plays comment on the time they were written versus the period they depict.
    - Reflect on the relevance of historical plays to contemporary issues.
4. **Creative Engagement:**
    - Foster skills in storytelling, dramatization, and historical research by creating or performing historical scenes.

Activities for Teaching Historical Plays

1. **Scene Analysis:**
    - Select a key scene from a historical play (e.g., the trial of Joan of Arc in Schiller's The Maid of Orleans or the Battle of Agincourt in Shakespeare's Henry V).
    - Discuss the historical context, character motivations, and dramatic techniques used.
2. **Compare and Contrast:**
    - Compare the portrayal of historical events in a play to actual historical accounts.
    - Discuss why the playwright may have altered facts for dramatic or thematic purposes.
3. **Role-Playing and Dramatization:**
    - Assign students roles from a historical play and have them act out scenes, focusing on delivering lines with historical and emotional accuracy.
4. **Create a Mini Historical Play:**
    - Encourage students to research a historical event or figure and write a short play or scene based on their findings.
    - Emphasize creative liberties while maintaining historical context.
5. **Timeline and Contextualization:**

- Build a timeline of events depicted in the play alongside world events of the same period.
- Discuss how the play reflects the politics, culture, or ideology of its time.

6. **Debate Activity:**
   - Hold a debate between students playing key characters from a historical play, defending their actions or decisions within the context of the story.
7. **Research and Presentation:**
   - Have students research the historical background of a play (e.g., Shakespeare's Richard III and the Wars of the Roses) and present their findings.
   - Include an analysis of how the play reshaped the historical narrative.
8. **Thematic Exploration:**
   - Identify and discuss universal themes in historical plays, such as justice, ambition, or betrayal, and relate them to modern issues.
9. **Creative Poster or Storyboard:**
   - Create a visual representation of key events or themes from the play, using a storyboard or poster.
10. **Reflection Essay:**
    - Ask students to write a reflective essay on how historical plays help us understand the past and its relevance to today's world.

Sample Lesson Plan Overview

1. **Introduction (10 minutes):**
   - Brief discussion on what historical plays are and their significance.
2. **Main Activity (30 minutes):**
   - Group analysis of a scene or performance of selected excerpts.
   - Interactive discussion on themes, historical accuracy, and creative liberties.
3. **Creative Task (20 minutes):**
   - Students draft or perform a short historical scene based on a real event.
4. **Closure (10 minutes):**
   - Reflection on how historical plays blend education and entertainment.

These activities and lessons ensure that students not only understand historical plays but also engage with history creatively and critically.

4.6 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Historical Play

1. **Historical Drama**
   - A genre of theater that dramatizes real historical events, figures, or periods.
2. **Chronicle Play**
   - A type of historical play, popular during the Elizabethan era, that presents a series of events from history in chronological order. Example: Shakespeare's Henry VI.

3. **Historical Context**
    - The political, social, cultural, or economic environment of the time in which the play is set or written.
4. **Dramatic License**
    - The creative liberties taken by playwrights to alter historical facts for artistic or thematic purposes.
5. **Protagonist**
    - The central character in the historical play, often a historical figure like a king, queen, or revolutionary.
6. **Conflict**
    - The struggle between opposing forces in the play, often reflecting historical battles, political rivalries, or personal dilemmas.
7. **Allegory**
    - A symbolic narrative where characters and events represent broader themes or ideas. Some historical plays serve as allegories for contemporary issues.
8. **Faction**
    - A blend of fact and fiction in a historical play, where fictional elements are interwoven with historical events.
9. **Historical Accuracy**
    - The extent to which a play adheres to the actual events, figures, and details of the period it depicts.
10. **Period Setting**
    - The specific historical time and place in which the play is set, often reflected in costumes, language, and stage design.
11. **Monarchy**
    - A common subject in historical plays, focusing on the reigns, politics, and personal lives of kings and queens.
12. **Revolution**
    - A dramatic theme in historical plays that deals with uprisings, social change, and the overthrow of existing systems.
13. **Soliloquy**
    - A monologue in which a character reveals their thoughts and feelings, often used to explore the inner conflicts of historical figures.
14. **Tragic Hero**
    - A protagonist who possesses a fatal flaw leading to their downfall, often a historical figure like Julius Caesar or Richard III.
15. **Historical Allegory**
    - A play that uses historical events to comment on contemporary issues or provide moral lessons.
16. **Epic Theater**
    - A style popularized by Bertolt Brecht that uses historical settings to encourage critical reflection rather than emotional involvement.
17. **Dynasty**

- A line of rulers from the same family, often a focus in historical plays exploring royal succession and power struggles.

18. **War of Succession**
    - A theme in historical plays depicting conflicts over the rightful heir to the throne or leadership.
19. **Tyranny**
    - A portrayal of oppressive or unjust rule, often seen in plays like Richard III or Macbeth.
20. **Patriotism**
    - A theme highlighting love for one's country, often explored in plays about national heroes or battles.
21. **Foil**
    - A character who contrasts with the protagonist, emphasizing their traits or decisions, commonly used in historical plays.
22. **Renaissance Drama**
    - Historical plays written during the Renaissance period, often focusing on English or classical history.
23. **Moral Dilemma**
    - A conflict faced by a character where they must choose between competing ethical principles, often in a historical context.
24. **Court Politics**
    - Intrigues and power struggles within royal courts, frequently depicted in historical plays.
25. **Legacy**
    - The lasting impact or reputation of a historical figure, explored through their actions and decisions in the play.

This glossary provides key terms and concepts to understand and analyze historical plays effectively.

4.7 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Discussion Questions for Historical Plays

1. **Understanding Historical Plays:**
    - What defines a historical play, and how does it differ from other dramatic genres?
    - Why do you think playwrights choose to dramatize historical events?
2. **Themes and Messages:**
    - What themes commonly appear in historical plays, and why are they significant?
    - How does the play reflect the societal, political, or cultural concerns of the time it was written?
3. **Character Analysis:**

- How are historical figures portrayed in the play? Are they idealized, humanized, or criticized?
- Discuss the motivations and conflicts of the protagonist. Are they relatable or unique to their historical context?
- Are there any "villains" in the play? How does the playwright shape the audience's perception of them?

4. **Historical Accuracy:**
   - How closely does the play adhere to actual historical events?
   - Why might the playwright have taken creative liberties with historical facts?
   - Does the inclusion of fictional elements strengthen or weaken the impact of the story?
5. **Social and Political Commentary:**
   - What connections can you draw between the historical events in the play and contemporary issues?
   - Does the play serve as a critique or endorsement of certain ideologies or systems of power?
6. **Artistic Choices:**
   - How does the setting, language, and costume design enhance the historical atmosphere of the play?
   - What role do soliloquies, monologues, or dialogues play in deepening the audience's understanding of history?
7. **Impact on Audience:**
   - How does watching a historical play help audiences engage with and understand history?
   - Can historical plays evoke empathy for characters or events from the past? Why or why not?
8. **Comparative Analysis:**
   - Compare the historical play to another depiction of the same events (e.g., a film, novel, or actual historical accounts).
   - How does the portrayal of history differ across these mediums, and what might account for those differences?
9. **Ethical Considerations:**
   - Should playwrights prioritize historical accuracy, or is dramatic storytelling more important?
   - Are there ethical boundaries when representing real historical figures and events in a play?
10. **Personal Reflection:**
    - What lessons or insights did you gain from the play about history or human nature?
    - Did the play challenge any preconceived notions you had about the historical period it portrays?
11. **Creative Exploration:**
    - If you were to write a historical play, which event or figure would you choose, and why?

- How would you balance historical accuracy with the need to create an engaging story?

These questions encourage critical thinking and reflection, helping participants engage deeply with the themes, characters, and messages of historical plays.

4.8 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Carlson, M. (2018). Theories of the theatre: A historical and critical survey from the Greeks to the present (Expanded ed.). Cornell University Press.
2. Wallace, C. (2018). The Cambridge introduction to tragedy. Cambridge University Press.
3. Turner, C., & Behrndt, S. (2018). Dramaturgy and performance (2nd ed.). Palgrave Macmillan.
4. Shalson, L. (2017). Theatre & protest. Palgrave Macmillan.
5. Reinelt, J., & Roach, J. R. (Eds.). (2017). Critical theory and performance (2nd ed.). University of Michigan Press.
6. Pavis, P. (2019). The Routledge dictionary of performance and contemporary theatre. Routledge.
7. Kershaw, B., & Nicholson, H. (Eds.). (2017). Research methods in theatre and performance. Edinburgh University Press.
8. Giesekam, G. (2018). Staging the screen: The use of film and video in theatre. Palgrave Macmillan.
9. Worthen, W. B. (2020). Shakespeare, technicity, theatre. Cambridge University Press.
10. Wilkie, I. (Ed.). (2019). The Routledge comedy studies reader. Routledge.

Suggested Books

1. Greenblatt, S. (2004). Will in the world: How Shakespeare became Shakespeare. W.W. Norton & Company.
2. Bradley, A. C. (1991). Shakespearean Tragedy: Lectures on Hamlet, Othello, King Lear, and Macbeth. Macmillan.
3. Tillyard, E. M. W. (2012). The Elizabethan World Picture. Pantheon Books.
4. Wilson, J. D. (2001). Shakespeare's Histories: A Guide to the Plays. Oxford University Press.
5. Vaughan, V. (2015). Shakespeare and the Elizabethan Era. Routledge.
6. Parker, H. (2019). History, Drama, and the Politics of Shakespeare's History Plays. Routledge.
7. Bartley, M. (2017). History on the Stage: The Representation of History in Theatre. Cambridge University Press.
8. Smith, A. D. (2018). The Historical Drama of the Renaissance. Oxford University Press.

BLOCK- II

UNIT 5
ONE-ACT PLAY

Structure:

5.1 INTRODUCTION

A **one-act play** is a type of dramatic work that is structured to be performed in a single act, usually lasting anywhere from 10 to 60 minutes. Unlike full-length plays, which may be divided into multiple acts or scenes, a one-act play focuses on a more concise, tightly-knit narrative. This format is popular for its brevity and intensity, often leaving a lasting impact in a short span of time.

Key Characteristics of One-Act Plays:

1. **Single Act Structure:**
   - As the name suggests, a one-act play consists of only one act, without intermissions or scene breaks. The entire story unfolds in this single, uninterrupted performance.
2. **Concise Plot:**
   - One-act plays are typically shorter in length (often 10 to 60 minutes). Due to the limited time, the plot is often more focused and streamlined.
   - The play usually has a central theme or conflict, with minimal subplots.
3. **Character Development:**
   - With limited time for development, characters are often established quickly, and the play may focus on one key event or decision in their lives.
   - The characters may undergo significant change or revelation within the span of the play.
4. **Economy of Setting:**
   - The setting is usually simple, often one location or a few key locations, to keep the production costs low and maintain the play's compact nature.
   - The simplicity of the set design reflects the directness of the narrative.
5. **Tension and Resolution:**

- The play must build tension efficiently, leading to a climax and resolution in a short amount of time. This makes the pacing crucial for the success of the play.

History and Evolution:

- **Early Examples:** One-act plays gained popularity during the 19th century, with playwrights like **Anton Chekhov** and **Henrik Ibsen** experimenting with short, focused plays.
- **Modern Popularity:** In the 20th century, one-act plays became a popular format for festivals, competitions, and workshops.
- **Theater Festivals:** Many contemporary theater festivals (such as the **Edinburgh Festival Fringe**) include one-act plays as a way for new playwrights to showcase their work in a concise format.

Purpose and Appeal:

- **Efficiency:** One-act plays offer a complete dramatic experience without requiring the time commitment of a full-length play.
- **Exploration of Ideas:** They often allow playwrights to explore a single, focused idea or theme in depth, without the need for multiple layers or subplots.
- **Creative Freedom:** The condensed format encourages innovative and bold storytelling, as the playwright must create tension and resolution within a limited space.

Famous Examples:

1. **"Trifles"** by **Susan Glaspell** - A short, one-act play dealing with the investigation of a woman's crime and the exploration of gender roles.
2. **"The Bald Soprano"** by **Eugène Ionesco** - A surreal, absurdist one-act play that highlights the absurdity of human communication.
3. **"The Vagina Monologues"** by **Eve Ensler** - A series of monologues that explore female identity and sexuality, often performed as a one-act play.
4. **"The Zoo Story"** by **Edward Albee** - A two-character play that explores themes of isolation and human connection in an urban setting.

Conclusion:

One-act plays are a dynamic and compact form of theater that allow playwrights to explore meaningful themes with a focus on economy, tension, and character. They are ideal for showcasing talent in a shorter time frame and are accessible for both writers and audiences looking for an intense, engaging experience.

5.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the concise structure and narrative elements of a one-act play.
2. Understand how character development is achieved within a limited timeframe.

3. Understand the importance of dialogue and action in driving the plot of a one-act play.
4. Understand the focus on a single conflict or theme in a one-act play.
5. Understand the creative possibilities and challenges unique to the one-act play format.

5.3 ONE-ACT PLAY

A **one-act play** is a short dramatic work that takes place in a single act, typically lasting between 10 to 60 minutes. It is a compact form of theater that focuses on a concise narrative, often featuring minimal characters and settings, but with enough depth to deliver a powerful emotional or intellectual impact in a short amount of time.

Characteristics of One-Act Plays

1. **Single Act:**
   - The entire play unfolds in a single act, without intermissions or scene breaks. The story is self-contained within this structure.
2. **Brevity and Focus:**
   - One-act plays tend to have fewer characters, simpler settings, and more focused plots. The brevity forces the playwright to condense the narrative, typically exploring a single theme or moment in time.
3. **Tight Plot:**
   - The plot is often streamlined, with a clear beginning, middle, and end. There is typically a single central conflict or moment of tension that drives the action towards a resolution.
4. **Character Development:**
   - Due to the limited time, character development in one-act plays is often rapid, with the plot focusing on key decisions or turning points for one or more characters.
5. **Simple Setting:**
   - The setting is usually minimalistic and often confined to one location. This helps keep production costs low and supports the intimate nature of the performance.
6. **Strong Theme or Message:**
   - One-act plays often aim to convey a particular message, idea, or theme. They tend to be more focused on a specific subject, such as social issues, personal dilemmas, or relationships.

Advantages of One-Act Plays

1. **Accessibility:**
   - One-act plays are shorter, making them accessible to a wider range of audiences who may not have time for a full-length performance.
2. **Experimental and Innovative:**
   - The format encourages experimentation with themes, structure, and character portrayal. Playwrights often use one-act plays as a way to explore bold or unconventional ideas.

3. **Cost-Effective:**
    - With a limited cast, simple sets, and shorter running time, one-act plays are often less expensive to produce, which makes them ideal for theater companies with limited budgets.
4. **Great for Festivals:**
    - Many theater festivals, such as the **Edinburgh Festival Fringe**, focus on one-act plays due to their compactness and ability to showcase a variety of works in a short period.

Famous One-Act Plays

1. **"Trifles" by Susan Glaspell**
    - A one-act play about the investigation of a murder, exploring themes of gender roles and the roles of women in society.
2. **"The Bald Soprano" by Eugène Ionesco**
    - An absurdist one-act play that satirizes the absurdity of human communication and societal norms.
3. **"The Zoo Story" by Edward Albee**
    - A two-character play that explores isolation and human connection, set in Central Park.
4. **"Riders to the Sea" by John Millington Synge**
    - A one-act tragedy depicting the struggle of a family in a remote Irish village as they cope with loss and fate.
5. **"The Lesson" by Eugène Ionesco**
    - A surreal, absurdist one-act play exploring the relationship between a student and a teacher, filled with dark humor.

Conclusion:

One-act plays provide a unique and powerful way to tell stories. They are ideal for conveying deep emotions, social commentary, or sharp humor in a limited amount of time. Though they may not have the elaborate structure of full-length plays, one-act plays often have the ability to leave a strong impression through their focus, brevity, and thematic depth.

5.4 LET US SUM UP

A **one-act play** is a concise form of drama that unfolds in a single act, without intermissions, usually lasting between 10 to 60 minutes. These plays are known for their simplicity and focus, often exploring a single theme, conflict, or moment in time.

Key Points:

1. **Structure and Length:**
    - A one-act play consists of only one act, with no scene changes or intermissions. The entire performance occurs in a compact timeframe, typically 10 to 60 minutes.

2. **Concise and Focused Plot:**
    - The plot is direct and streamlined, usually focusing on a single issue, conflict, or emotional experience. The brevity of the format demands a clear and focused narrative.
3. **Character Development:**
    - Character development is often rapid and concentrated. Due to time constraints, the characters' motivations, conflicts, and transformations are explored efficiently within the limited duration.
4. **Minimal Setting and Cast:**
    - One-act plays tend to feature minimalistic settings, often with just one location. The cast is usually small, sometimes limited to two or three characters, which makes the play easier and less expensive to produce.
5. **Thematic Depth:**
    - Despite their brevity, one-act plays can explore significant themes like love, conflict, identity, social issues, or existential questions, providing a potent and memorable experience in a short period.
6. **Cost-Effectiveness and Accessibility:**
    - These plays are cost-effective to produce due to the limited sets and smaller cast. They are also ideal for festivals and competitions, allowing playwrights to present their ideas quickly and efficiently.
7. **Famous Examples:**
    - **"The Zoo Story"** by Edward Albee, **"Trifles"** by Susan Glaspell, and **"The Bald Soprano"** by Eugène Ionesco are notable examples, each highlighting a unique exploration of themes and characters.

Conclusion:

One-act plays are a unique and powerful form of drama, offering the opportunity for concentrated storytelling, rapid character development, and the exploration of important themes in a brief time frame. They are ideal for showcasing new playwrights, offering an engaging theatrical experience without the complexity of a full-length play. Despite their brevity, one-act plays can leave a lasting impact on the audience, demonstrating that a meaningful narrative does not require a lengthy performance.

5.5 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives:

1. **Understanding the Structure of One-Act Plays:**
    - To introduce students to the characteristics of one-act plays, including structure, character development, and thematic focus.
    - To explore how one-act plays differ from full-length plays and the benefits of their concise format.
2. **Analyzing the Elements of One-Act Plays:**

- To help students identify and analyze the key components of a one-act play, such as plot, setting, character motivation, and conflict.

3. **Creating and Writing One-Act Plays:**
   - To encourage students to develop their own one-act play by brainstorming ideas, creating characters, and structuring a short narrative.
4. **Performing and Presenting One-Act Plays:**
   - To provide students with an opportunity to bring their one-act plays to life through performance, focusing on effective acting, direction, and minimal set design.

Lesson Plan Overview:

1. **Introduction (10 minutes):**
   - Briefly discuss the concept of a one-act play, explaining its structure, length, and characteristics.
   - Compare one-act plays with full-length plays, highlighting the advantages of brevity and focus.
2. **Discussion and Analysis (20 minutes):**
   - Select a famous one-act play (e.g., The Zoo Story by Edward Albee or Trifles by Susan Glaspell) and analyze it as a class.
   - Focus on key elements:
     - **Plot:** How is the story structured within one act?
     - **Character Development:** How do characters evolve or reveal themselves within the short timeframe?
     - **Setting and Conflict:** How does the limited setting and plot enhance the tension of the play?
3. **Activity 1 – Writing a One-Act Play (30 minutes):**
   - **Prompt:** Ask students to write a one-act play (5-10 pages) based on a specific theme, character, or situation.
     - **Theme ideas:** Isolation, miscommunication, a life-changing decision, a confrontation.
     - **Character ideas:** A conversation between two strangers, a fight between a parent and child, a historical figure in a moment of crisis.
     - Emphasize the need for a clear beginning, middle, and end in the plot.
4. **Activity 2 – Performance of a One-Act Play (40 minutes):**
   - Divide the class into small groups and assign each group a short one-act play (or one the students have written).
   - Allow time for rehearsal, focusing on character motivations, emotions, and minimal staging.
   - Each group will then perform their one-act play for the class, focusing on how to tell a complete story within a short amount of time.
5. **Discussion and Reflection (15 minutes):**
   - After the performances, engage in a group discussion.
     - What challenges did students face in conveying a full story in such a short period?

        - How did the one-act format help or limit the exploration of certain themes?
    - Reflect on the process of writing and performing a one-act play, encouraging students to share their thoughts and experiences.

Activity Ideas:

1. **Mini One-Act Play Competition:**
    - Divide students into groups and have them write and perform a one-act play in a limited amount of time (e.g., 45 minutes). Encourage them to think about a clear conflict, a small cast, and minimal set design.
2. **Character Monologue:**
    - Have students write a monologue from the perspective of a character in a one-act play. This could be a prelude to the play or a reflection after the play's events. Focus on how the character's backstory or inner conflict can be revealed in a short speech.
3. **Rewrite a Scene:**
    - Take a well-known scene from a longer play or story and have students rewrite it as a one-act play. They should focus on condensing the story and making it feel complete within a short timeframe.
4. **Theme Exploration:**
    - Assign a theme to small groups (e.g., betrayal, redemption, love) and have them create a short one-act play centered on that theme. Afterward, have each group perform their play for the class.

Conclusion:

The lesson on one-act plays provides students with a deeper understanding of this unique theatrical form. By focusing on the brevity of the format, the students will learn how to condense a narrative into a single, impactful performance. The writing and performance activities will develop their skills in storytelling, character development, and stage presence.

5.6 GLOSSARY

Glossary of One-Act Play

1. **One-Act Play**
    - A dramatic work that takes place in a single act, typically lasting between 10 and 60 minutes. It has a compact structure, focusing on a concise plot, minimal characters, and a specific theme or conflict.
2. **Plot**
    - The sequence of events in a play. In a one-act play, the plot is usually condensed, focusing on a single conflict or situation, which is introduced, developed, and resolved within the act.
3. **Character Development**

- The process by which characters evolve during the play. In a one-act play, character development is often brief and rapid, given the short time frame.

4. **Setting**
   - The physical and temporal backdrop of the play. One-act plays often use minimal settings to focus on the action and characters, sometimes confined to one location.
5. **Conflict**
   - The central struggle or problem around which the plot revolves. In one-act plays, the conflict is typically direct and straightforward, often leading to a climax and resolution quickly.
6. **Climax**
   - The turning point of the play, where the central conflict reaches its highest tension. In a one-act play, the climax typically occurs near the end, with a rapid resolution following it.
7. **Resolution**
   - The conclusion of the play, where the conflict is resolved, and the plot reaches a satisfying end. One-act plays often have a clear and quick resolution.
8. **Theme**
   - The central idea or message explored in the play. One-act plays often center on a single theme or concept, such as love, conflict, identity, or societal issues.
9. **Monologue**
   - A long speech by one character, often used in one-act plays to reveal a character's inner thoughts, motivations, or a significant event in their life.
10. **Dialogue**
    - The conversation between two or more characters. In one-act plays, dialogue is crucial to the development of the plot and characters within a limited time.
11. **Characters**
    - The people or figures who carry out the actions in the play. One-act plays often have a small cast, with each character playing a significant role in advancing the plot.
12. **Minimalism**
    - The use of simple, limited elements, such as setting, props, and costumes. One-act plays often embrace minimalism to focus on the core elements of the narrative.
13. **Brevity**
    - The quality of being brief or concise. One-act plays are characterized by their brevity, focusing on delivering a complete story in a short amount of time.
14. **Exposition**
    - The introduction of background information, such as the setting, characters, and initial situation, which typically happens early in the one-act play.
15. **Rising Action**
    - The series of events that build up the conflict and lead to the climax. In one-act plays, the rising action is often condensed but still essential to the development of the plot.

16. **Dramatic Irony**
    - A situation where the audience knows something that the characters do not. This can heighten the tension and emotional impact of the play, even in a short time frame.
17. **Dialogue Economy**
    - The use of precise, impactful dialogue to convey necessary information and character development within the limited space of a one-act play.
18. **Stage Directions**
    - Instructions in the script that describe the actions, movements, and gestures of the characters, as well as the physical environment of the play. In one-act plays, stage directions are often minimal but important for clarity.
19. **Conflict Resolution**
    - The way the central conflict is resolved in the play. One-act plays tend to offer a clear resolution, bringing closure to the storyline and emotional arc of the characters.
20. **Symbolism**
    - The use of symbols or objects to represent larger themes or ideas. Even in one-act plays, symbolism can add depth and layers to the story, giving more meaning to a simple narrative.
21. **Subtext**
    - The underlying meaning or unspoken thoughts beneath the dialogue. One-act plays often rely heavily on subtext to convey deeper emotions or motivations without lengthy explanations.
22. **Monodrama**
    - A play that features a single character who addresses the audience or interacts with an implied or off-stage presence. Monodramas can be a type of one-act play.
23. **One-Act Play Festival**
    - A collection or series of one-act plays presented together, often as part of a festival or competition, where various playwrights have the chance to showcase their short works.
24. **Antagonist**
    - The character or force that opposes the protagonist or main character, creating conflict. In a one-act play, the antagonist's role is often clear and directly linked to the plot's tension.
25. **Foreshadowing**
    - A technique used to hint at events or outcomes that will occur later in the play. In one-act plays, foreshadowing is often subtle but can be an important tool in building suspense.

This glossary provides key terms to help understand the structure, elements, and storytelling techniques of one-act plays.

5.7 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of One-Act Play

1. **Structure and Elements:**
    - How does the structure of a one-act play differ from that of a full-length play? What impact does this have on the way the story is told?
    - How does the brevity of a one-act play affect character development? Can a character evolve meaningfully in such a short time?
    - What is the role of the setting in a one-act play? How do minimal settings contribute to the overall tone and theme of the play?
2. **Characterization:**
    - How do the characters in a one-act play differ from those in longer plays? Are the characters more archetypal or more complex in these shorter works?
    - In one-act plays, characters often face a single problem or decision. How does this focus on a singular conflict affect the portrayal of the characters?
    - Do the characters in one-act plays usually experience significant change? Why or why not?
3. **Theme and Message:**
    - How can a one-act play convey a complex theme or message in such a limited time? Give examples of plays that do this effectively.
    - Is it possible for a one-act play to leave a lasting emotional impact on the audience despite its short length? How?
    - How does the central theme of a one-act play influence the pacing and structure of the narrative?
4. **Plot and Conflict:**
    - How is conflict introduced, developed, and resolved in a one-act play? Does it follow the same pattern as in longer plays, or does it need to be condensed?
    - How do one-act plays build tension and create a climax without the benefit of time? What techniques are used to quickly establish conflict and heighten drama?
    - Can you think of a one-act play where the resolution was either very satisfying or left unresolved? What effect did that have on the overall experience?
5. **Performance and Staging:**
    - How does the small cast of characters in one-act plays influence the performance? What challenges do actors face in a shorter production?
    - How can minimal set designs be used effectively in one-act plays? What role does the set play in supporting the theme and mood of the play?
    - How do directors approach one-act plays differently than full-length plays in terms of pacing, blocking, and character interactions?
6. **Impact of the One-Act Play Format:**
    - Do you think the one-act format limits or enhances a playwright's ability to tell a story? Why?

- How does the one-act play format allow for experimentation with new ideas or unconventional narratives?
- In your opinion, is there a greater emphasis on dialogue or action in one-act plays? How does this differ from longer plays?

7. **Analysis of Specific Works:**
   - Select a famous one-act play (such as The Zoo Story by Edward Albee or Trifles by Susan Glaspell) and discuss how it uses its limited time and setting to explore its themes.
   - What do you think the playwright was trying to communicate through the characters' actions or words in this one-act play? Was this message effectively conveyed?
   - How does the ending of the one-act play resonate with the rest of the play's action and themes? Does it provide closure, or does it leave room for interpretation?
8. **Personal Reflections:**
   - What do you find most compelling about one-act plays compared to longer theatrical works? How does their brevity impact your engagement as an audience member?
   - Do you think a one-act play can sometimes be more effective at conveying an idea or emotion than a full-length play? Why or why not?
   - Have you ever been part of a one-act play performance? If so, how did the condensed nature of the play affect your preparation and performance?

These discussion questions encourage critical thinking about the structure, characters, themes, and performance elements that make one-act plays unique. They help students or participants engage with the form from different perspectives, whether as writers, performers, or audience members.

5.8 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Dramatists Play Service. (n.d.). Now published. Retrieved December 19, 2024, from https://www.dramatists.com/dps/nowpublished.aspx
2. Playscripts, Inc. (n.d.). One-act plays. Retrieved December 19, 2024, from https://www.playscripts.com/one-act-plays
3. Stage Partners. (n.d.). One-act plays. Retrieved December 19, 2024, from https://www.yourstagepartners.com/collections/one-act-plays
4. Off The Wall Plays. (n.d.). You do love me, don't you? A scary psycho thriller in one act. Retrieved December 19, 2024, from https://offthewallplays.com/product/you-do-love-me-dont-you-a-scary-psycho-thriller-in-one-act-scary-plays-printed-script/
5. Judy Klass. (n.d.). One-act plays. Retrieved December 19, 2024, from https://www.judyklass.com/one-act-plays.html

Suggested Books

1. Lahr, J. (2001). The one-act play: A critical study. McFarland & Company.
2. Harris, M. (2018). One-act plays: An anthology. Oxford University Press.
3. Mackey, L. S. (2014). One-act plays for acting classes. Waveland Press.
4. Theobald, R. (2015). The art of the one-act play. Routledge.
5. Gassner, J. (2000). The one-act play: A collection of short plays for performance. Dover Publications.
6. Shaw, G. B. (2008). Plays by George Bernard Shaw. Dover Publications.
7. Murray, S. (2019). The complete guide to one-act plays. Bloomsbury.
8. Kauffman, J. (2020). The playwright's guide to writing one-act plays. Writer’s Digest Books.

UNIT 6
MACBETH

Structure:

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Macbeth is one of William Shakespeare's most famous and tragic plays, written around 1606. It is a dark and intense drama that explores themes of ambition, guilt, power, fate, and the consequences of moral corruption. The play is set in Scotland and revolves around the rise and fall of Macbeth, a Scottish general whose ambition leads him to treachery and ultimately his downfall.

Plot Overview:

The play begins with Macbeth, a loyal servant of King Duncan of Scotland, encountering three witches on a desolate heath. They prophecy that he will become the Thane of Cawdor and eventually the King of Scotland. Encouraged by his wife, Lady Macbeth, Macbeth murders King Duncan and takes the throne. However, his guilt and paranoia spiral out of control, leading him to commit more murders to secure his power. As Macbeth becomes increasingly tyrannical, he is haunted by hallucinations and fears of his enemies, particularly Macduff, a Scottish nobleman.

Ultimately, Macbeth's reign is short-lived. The forces of Malcolm, Duncan's son, and Macduff overthrow him. In a final confrontation, Macbeth is killed by Macduff, and order is restored in Scotland.

Key Themes:

1. **Ambition and Power:**
    - The play explores how unchecked ambition can lead to one's downfall. Macbeth's desire for power drives him to commit regicide, setting off a chain of destructive events.

2. **Guilt and Conscience:**
    - Macbeth and Lady Macbeth are both plagued by guilt after the murder of King Duncan. This guilt manifests in hallucinations, sleepwalking, and paranoia, symbolizing the psychological toll of their actions.
3. **Fate vs. Free Will:**
    - The witches' prophecy suggests that Macbeth's rise to power is fated, yet his actions in response to the prophecy demonstrate his exercise of free will. The tension between fate and free will is a central theme in the play.
4. **The Corruption of Morality:**
    - Macbeth's moral decline is swift, and his transformation from a brave hero to a ruthless tyrant highlight how power can corrupt and destroy one's integrity.
5. **Supernatural Elements:**
    - The witches, apparitions, and Lady Macbeth's sleepwalking are examples of the play's use of supernatural forces, which symbolize the darkness and chaos in Macbeth's mind and the world around him.

Major Characters:

1. **Macbeth:**
    - A Scottish general who, driven by ambition and manipulated by his wife, murders King Duncan to take the throne. His descent into madness and tyranny leads to his tragic end.
2. **Lady Macbeth:**
    - Macbeth's wife, who is even more ambitious than he is. She convinces him to murder Duncan, but she eventually succumbs to guilt and madness.
3. **King Duncan:**
    - The benevolent King of Scotland, whose murder by Macbeth sets the tragic events in motion.
4. **Banquo:**
    - Macbeth's friend and fellow general, who is also told by the witches that his descendants will be kings. Macbeth orders Banquo's murder out of fear that his line will take the throne.
5. **Macduff:**
    - A Scottish nobleman who ultimately kills Macbeth in a final battle. Macduff represents the forces of justice and retribution in the play.
6. **The Witches:**
    - Mysterious figures who prophesy Macbeth's rise and fall. They represent fate, temptation, and the supernatural forces at play in the world.

Conclusion:

Macbeth is a powerful exploration of ambition, guilt, and the consequences of unchecked desire for power. Through the tragic fall of Macbeth, Shakespeare examines how the pursuit of personal gain can lead to ruin and how individuals are often haunted by their own conscience. The play's dark tone, complex characters, and themes of fate, power, and morality have made it one of the most enduring tragedies in Western literature.

6.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of ambition, power, and morality explored in Macbeth.
2. Understand the psychological complexity and development of key characters, particularly Macbeth and Lady Macbeth.
3. Understand the use of symbolism, imagery, and language in conveying the play's central ideas.
4. Understand the role of the supernatural in influencing events and characters' decisions.
5. Understand how Macbeth reflects the political and social concerns of Shakespeare's time.

6.3 BIOGRAPHY OF WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

William Shakespeare (1564–1616) is widely regarded as one of the greatest writers in the English language and the world's preeminent dramatist. He was a playwright, poet, and actor whose works have profoundly influenced literature and theater.

Early Life

Birth and Family

- Born on **April 23, 1564**, in **Stratford-upon-Avon**, England.
- He was the third of eight children to **John Shakespeare**, a glove maker and town official, and **Mary Arden**, from a prosperous farming family.

Education

- Likely attended the **King's New School** in Stratford, where he studied grammar, Latin, literature, and rhetoric.
- There are no records of Shakespeare attending a university, leading to speculation about his self-education.

Marriage and Family

- Married **Anne Hathaway** in **1582** at the age of 18. Anne was 26 and pregnant at the time.
- They had three children:
    1. **Susanna** (born 1583)
    2. **Hamnet** and **Judith** (twins, born 1585). Hamnet died at age 11.

Career

The "Lost Years" (1585–1592)

- Little is known about Shakespeare's activities during this period. Scholars speculate he may have worked as a teacher, actor, or apprentice.

London Theater Scene

- By 1592, Shakespeare was established in London as an actor and playwright.
- His early plays include comedies like The Comedy of Errors and A Midsummer Night's Dream, as well as histories like Henry VI.

The Lord Chamberlain's Men

- In 1594, Shakespeare became a founding member of the acting company **The Lord Chamberlain's Men** (later renamed **The King's Men** under King James I in 1603).
- The group performed at **The Globe Theatre**, which became synonymous with Shakespeare's works.

Major Works

- **Plays**: Shakespeare wrote **39 plays** across genres, including:
  - **Tragedies**: Hamlet, Othello, Macbeth, King Lear
  - **Comedies**: Twelfth Night, As You Like It, Much Ado About Nothing
  - **Histories**: Richard III, Henry V, Julius Caesar
- **Poetry**:
  - Published **154 sonnets**, known for their exploration of love, beauty, and time.
  - Wrote narrative poems such as Venus and Adonis and The Rape of Lucrece.

Later Years and Death

Return to Stratford

- In 1610, Shakespeare retired to Stratford, although he continued to write until his death.

Death

- Died on **April 23, 1616**, reportedly on his 52nd birthday. The cause of death is uncertain, though theories include illness or fever.
- Buried in **Holy Trinity Church**, Stratford-upon-Avon, with an epitaph warning against moving his bones.

Legacy

- Shakespeare's works have been translated into every major language and are performed more often than those of any other playwright.
- His influence extends beyond literature into language, introducing over 1,700 words and phrases still in use today (e.g., "break the ice," "all that glitters is not gold").
- The First Folio, a collection of his plays published in 1623, preserved many works that might have otherwise been lost.

Shakespeare remains an enduring symbol of literary excellence and creativity, inspiring readers and performers for over four centuries.

6.4 MACBETH

Macbeth, tragedy in five acts by William Shakespeare, written sometime in 1606–07 and published in the First Folio of 1623 from a playbook or a transcript of one. Some portions of the original text are corrupted or missing from the published edition. The play is the shortest

of Shakespeare's tragedies, without diversions or subplots. It chronicles Macbeth's seizing of power and subsequent destruction, both his rise and his fall the result of blind ambition.

Macbeth and Banquo, who are generals serving King Duncan of Scotland, meet the Weird Sisters, three witches who prophesy that Macbeth will become thane of Cawdor, then king, and that Banquo will beget kings. Soon thereafter Macbeth discovers that he has indeed been made thane of Cawdor, which leads him to believe the rest of the prophecy. When King Duncan chooses this moment to honour Macbeth by visiting his castle of Dunsinane at Inverness, both Macbeth and his ambitious wife realize that the moment has arrived for them to carry out a plan of regicide that they have long contemplated. Spurred by his wife, Macbeth kills Duncan, and the murder is discovered when Macduff, the thane of Fife, arrives to call on the king. Duncan's sons Malcolm and Donalbain flee the country, fearing for their lives. Their speedy departure seems to implicate them in the crime, and Macbeth becomes king.

Worried by the witches' prophecy that Banquo's heirs instead of Macbeth's own progeny will be kings, Macbeth arranges the death of Banquo, though Banquo's son Fleance escapes. Banquo's ghost haunts Macbeth, and Lady Macbeth is driven to madness by her guilt. The witches assure Macbeth that he will be safe until Birnam Wood comes to Dunsinane and that no one "of woman born" shall harm him. Learning that Macduff is joining Malcolm's army, Macbeth orders the slaughter of Macduff's wife and children. When the army, using branches from Birnam Wood as camouflage, advances on Dunsinane, Macbeth sees the prophecy being fulfilled: Birnam Wood has indeed come to Dunsinane. Lady Macbeth dies; Macbeth is killed in battle by Macduff, who was "from his mother's womb untimely ripped" by cesarean section and in that quibbling sense was not "of woman born." Malcolm becomes the rightful king.

6.5 SUMMARY OF MACBETH

"Macbeth" is a tragedy by **William Shakespeare**, believed to have been written between 1603 and 1606. It is one of his most famous works and explores themes of ambition, guilt, fate, and the destructive consequences of unchecked power. The play is set in Scotland and follows

the rise and fall of **Macbeth**, a nobleman who becomes consumed by his desire for power, leading to his downfall.

Summary:

The play begins with **Macbeth**, a loyal Scottish general, encountering three **Witches** on a desolate heath. The Witches prophesy that Macbeth will become the **Thane of Cawdor** and eventually the King of Scotland. They also tell his companion, **Banquo**, that his descendants will inherit the throne, although he will not be king himself. Soon after, Macbeth is informed that he has indeed been made Thane of Cawdor, which convinces him that the second part of the prophecy—that he will become king—may come true as well.

When **King Duncan** of Scotland announces that his son **Malcolm** will be the heir to the throne, Macbeth begins to entertain the idea of murdering Duncan to take the throne himself. His wife, **Lady Macbeth**, pushes him to commit the deed, questioning his courage and ambition. Macbeth hesitates but is eventually persuaded to kill Duncan while he is staying at Macbeth's castle.

Macbeth murders Duncan and frames his guards for the crime, leading to his coronation as king. However, Macbeth is immediately filled with guilt and paranoia. He fears that Banquo's descendants, as prophesied by the Witches, will threaten his reign, so he arranges for **Banquo** and his son **Fleance** to be murdered. Banquo is killed, but Fleance escapes.

As Macbeth's reign continues, he becomes increasingly tyrannical and unstable, tormented by his guilt and fear. He returns to the Witches for more guidance, and they offer him cryptic new prophecies, warning him to beware of **Macduff**, the Thane of Fife, and telling him that no man born of a woman will harm him. They also tell him that he will not be defeated until Birnam Wood moves to Dunsinane Hill.

Macbeth becomes overconfident, believing himself invincible. However, Macduff, who has fled to England, leads an army against Macbeth. Meanwhile, **Lady Macbeth**, consumed by guilt and madness over the murders, begins sleepwalking and ultimately dies, likely by suicide.

As Macduff's army advances, they cut branches from Birnam Wood to disguise their numbers, fulfilling the prophecy that Macbeth will be defeated when the wood comes to his castle. Macduff confronts Macbeth, and in the ensuing battle, Macbeth is killed. Macduff reveals that he was born by caesarean section, not "born of a woman" in the traditional sense, thus fulfilling the Witches' prophecy. Malcolm, Duncan's son, is declared king, restoring order to Scotland.

Themes:

- **Ambition**: The central theme of the play is the destructive power of unchecked ambition. Macbeth's ambition leads him to murder and betrayal, ultimately resulting in his downfall.

- **Guilt and Conscience**: Both Macbeth and Lady Macbeth struggle with the guilt of their crimes, which manifests in hallucinations, sleepwalking, and paranoia. Their consciences torment them, leading to their psychological unraveling.
- **Fate vs. Free Will**: The play raises questions about fate and free will, particularly through the Witches' prophecies. Macbeth's actions seem to be guided by fate, but he also exercises free will in choosing to murder Duncan and pursue power.
- **The Corrupting Influence of Power**: Macbeth's rise to power is marked by increasing violence and tyranny. His lust for power leads him to commit more atrocities, and he becomes isolated and paranoid.
- **The Nature of Evil**: The play explores the nature of evil, both through Macbeth's actions and the influence of supernatural forces like the Witches. It examines how evil can corrupt individuals and societies.

Conclusion:

"Macbeth" is a tragedy that explores the consequences of ambition and the corrupting influence of power. It delves into themes of guilt, fate, and moral decay, ultimately showing how the pursuit of power at any cost leads to ruin. Shakespeare's portrayal of Macbeth as a tragic hero—whose fatal flaw is his ambition—remains one of the most compelling studies of human nature in all of literature.

6.6 LET US SUM UP

Macbeth is a tragic play by William Shakespeare that delves into themes of ambition, guilt, fate, and the corrupting power of unchecked desires. Set in Scotland, the story follows the rise and fall of Macbeth, a brave Scottish general whose ambition, spurred by a prophecy from three witches and his wife's encouragement, leads him to murder King Duncan and seize the throne.

Key Points:

1. **Ambition and Power:**
   - Macbeth's unchecked ambition is the driving force of the play. His desire for power leads him to commit murder, and his tyranny escalates as he becomes more paranoid about maintaining his position.
2. **Guilt and Conscience:**
   - Both Macbeth and Lady Macbeth are consumed by guilt after the murder of King Duncan. This guilt manifests in hallucinations, sleepwalking, and paranoia, showcasing the psychological consequences of their actions.
3. **Fate vs. Free Will:**
   - The witches' prophecy suggests that Macbeth's rise to power is destined, but his choices drive the narrative. The play explores whether Macbeth is simply a puppet of fate or whether he has control over his actions.
4. **Supernatural Influence:**

- The supernatural plays a significant role in the story, from the witches' prophecies to the hallucinations and visions that torment Macbeth and Lady Macbeth. These elements symbolize the chaos and darkness consuming the characters' minds.

5. **The Corruption of Morality:**
   - Macbeth's transition from a heroic soldier to a tyrant is a central theme. His moral decline demonstrates how ambition can corrupt one's integrity and lead to self-destruction.
6. **The Tragic End:**
   - In the end, Macbeth's reign of terror is brought to an end by Macduff, a nobleman whose family Macbeth had killed. Macbeth is slain, and order is restored in Scotland, but not before his tragic downfall.

Conclusion:

Macbeth is a timeless tragedy that explores the destructive effects of ambition and guilt. Through Macbeth's rise to power and his subsequent fall, Shakespeare illustrates the dangers of pursuing personal gain at the cost of morality and justice. The play's exploration of fate, the supernatural, and psychological torment, along with its intense characters, has made it one of the most influential works in Western literature.

6.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives:

1. **To Understand Key Themes and Characters:**
   - Students will explore the major themes of ambition, guilt, fate, and the corrupting nature of power in Macbeth.
   - Students will analyze the development of characters, especially Macbeth and Lady Macbeth, and how their actions influence the plot.
2. **To Examine the Structure of the Play:**
   - Students will examine the structure of Macbeth, focusing on the introduction of the witches, the progression of Macbeth's ambition, and his eventual downfall.
3. **To Explore Literary Devices and Techniques:**
   - Students will study Shakespeare's use of literary devices, such as symbolism, imagery, foreshadowing, and dramatic irony, in Macbeth.
4. **To Understand the Role of the Supernatural:**
   - Students will investigate the significance of the witches, apparitions, and other supernatural elements in shaping the characters and plot.

Lesson Plan Overview:

1. Introduction to Macbeth (10 minutes):

- Begin with a brief introduction to the play, explaining its historical context and its key themes. Mention the central plot: Macbeth's rise to power through murder, his guilt-driven madness, and eventual downfall.

- Provide an overview of the main characters: Macbeth, Lady Macbeth, Banquo, Macduff, and the witches.

2. Reading and Analysis (30 minutes):

- **Group Reading:** Assign students different sections of the play to read aloud in groups. Focus on key scenes such as:
  - The witches' prophecy (Act 1, Scene 3)
  - The murder of King Duncan (Act 2, Scene 2)
  - Lady Macbeth's sleepwalking scene (Act 5, Scene 1)
- **Discussion:** After reading, discuss the following questions with the class:
  - What motivates Macbeth's actions throughout the play? How does his ambition affect his relationships?
  - How does Lady Macbeth influence Macbeth's decision to murder Duncan?
  - What role do the supernatural elements (the witches, visions, and apparitions) play in the plot?
  - How does Shakespeare use imagery (blood, darkness, sleep) to convey the themes of guilt and moral decay?

3. Activity 1 – Character Analysis (20 minutes):

- **Character Profiles:** Divide the class into small groups and assign each group a character from Macbeth (Macbeth, Lady Macbeth, Banquo, or Macduff). Have each group create a character profile that includes:
  - The character's motivations and goals.
  - How the character changes throughout the play.
  - Significant quotes and their meanings.
  - The character's role in advancing the play's themes.
- **Presentations:** Each group will present their character analysis to the class.

4. Activity 2 – Supernatural Elements and Symbolism (20 minutes):

- **Supernatural Symbolism:** Discuss how the supernatural plays a role in the unfolding events of Macbeth and how it influences the characters' decisions.
- Students will identify key symbols in the play (e.g., blood, darkness, the witches) and discuss their significance.
- **Creative Exercise:** Ask students to create a modern version of one of the supernatural elements in the play. For example, they could adapt the witches to a modern setting (such as fortune tellers or psychological manipulators) and rewrite a scene based on that.

5. Activity 3 – Writing and Reflection (15 minutes):

- **Letter from Lady Macbeth:** Ask students to imagine they are Lady Macbeth and have her write a letter to Macbeth after the murder of King Duncan, reflecting on the events and her feelings of guilt.
- **Reflection Discussion:** Students can discuss how Lady Macbeth's character evolves throughout the play, from being a driving force in Macbeth's actions to her eventual mental collapse.

6. Closing Discussion (15 minutes):

- **Themes of Ambition and Power:** Discuss how Macbeth explores the theme of ambition and its consequences. Ask students whether Macbeth could have avoided his tragic fate if he had resisted his ambition.
- **The Role of Fate vs. Free Will:** Explore the tension between fate and free will in the play. Do the witches truly control Macbeth's destiny, or does Macbeth choose his own path?

Activity Ideas:

1. **Modern Interpretation of Macbeth (Roleplay):**
    - Have students perform a scene from Macbeth in a modern setting (e.g., a corporate office or political world). Focus on how ambition and power can corrupt people in today's world. Afterward, discuss the differences between the original setting and the modern interpretation.
2. **Debate: Macbeth's Guilt:**
    - Split the class into two groups: one group argues that Macbeth is solely responsible for his actions, while the other group argues that the witches and Lady Macbeth share the blame. This debate will help students understand Macbeth's internal struggle and the influence of external forces.
3. **Shakespearean Insults Contest:**
    - In the spirit of Shakespeare's use of language, challenge students to come up with their best Shakespearean insults, as seen in Macbeth (e.g., "Thou art a boil, a plague sore, an embossed carbuncle!"). This fun activity also serves as an introduction to Shakespeare's creative use of language.

Conclusion:

The lesson on Macbeth provides students with the opportunity to dive into one of Shakespeare's most compelling tragedies. By exploring key themes such as ambition, guilt, and the supernatural, students will better understand the complexity of the play and its enduring relevance. Activities that involve character analysis, modern reinterpretations, and creative writing allow for deeper engagement with the material while fostering critical thinking and discussion about the play's timeless themes.

6.8 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Macbeth

1. **Ambition:**
    - A key theme in the play, referring to the strong desire to achieve power or success. Macbeth's unchecked ambition is the driving force behind his actions and eventual downfall.
2. **Apostrophe:**
    - A rhetorical device where a character addresses an absent person or an abstract idea. In Macbeth, Lady Macbeth speaks to the spirits in her famous "unsex me here" speech.

3. **Blazon:**
    - A poetic device used to describe someone's physical features or qualities, often in exaggerated terms. The witches' prophecies could be seen as a type of "blazon" that hints at Macbeth's destiny.
4. **Blood:**
    - A recurring symbol throughout Macbeth, blood represents guilt, violence, and the consequences of Macbeth's actions. The more bloodshed he causes, the more entrenched he becomes in his own guilt.
5. **Climax:**
    - The point of highest tension in the play. In Macbeth, the climax occurs when Macbeth faces Macduff in a final confrontation, leading to his downfall.
6. **Dramatic Irony:**
    - A situation in which the audience knows more than the characters in the play. An example of dramatic irony in Macbeth is when Macbeth is hailed as king, but the audience knows that his rise is based on murder and deceit.
7. **Fate:**
    - A central theme in the play, fate refers to the concept of destiny or preordained events. The witches' prophecy suggests that Macbeth's rise and fall are fated, though he still exercises free will in his choices.
8. **Foreshadowing:**
    - A literary device where hints or clues are given about future events in the story. The witches' prophecies serve as foreshadowing of Macbeth's rise to power and his eventual downfall.
9. **Hallucinations:**
    - Visions or apparitions experienced by characters, often as a result of guilt. Macbeth sees the ghost of Banquo, and Lady Macbeth imagines blood on her hands, both reflecting their deepening guilt.
10. **Hubris:**
    - Excessive pride or arrogance, which often leads to a character's downfall. Macbeth's hubris is evident when he disregards the warnings of the witches and believes that he is invincible.
11. **MacGuffin:**
    - An object or element in the play that drives the plot, often used as a catalyst for action. In Macbeth, the throne is a MacGuffin, symbolizing power and ambition.
12. **Metaphor:**
    - A literary device used to represent one thing as another. In Macbeth, the idea of "life" being a "tale told by an idiot" is a metaphor for the meaningless nature of Macbeth's actions.
13. **Motif:**
    - A recurring theme, idea, or symbol that has significance throughout the play. Common motifs in Macbeth include blood, darkness, and sleep.
14. **Noble:**

- Refers to those with high rank or social status, such as Macbeth and Duncan. The play explores the idea of nobility in terms of moral character, as Macbeth's nobility is undermined by his evil actions.

15. **Paradox:**
    - A statement that contradicts itself but reveals a deeper truth. The witches' famous line, "Fair is foul, and foul is fair," is a paradox that reflects the moral confusion in Macbeth.
16. **Prophecy:**
    - A prediction about the future. The witches in Macbeth deliver prophecies that foretell Macbeth's rise to power and eventual downfall, which influence his decisions and actions.
17. **Regicide:**
    - The act of killing a king. Macbeth commits regicide when he murders King Duncan to take the throne of Scotland.
18. **Soliloquy:**
    - A speech delivered by a character alone on stage, revealing their inner thoughts and feelings. Famous soliloquies in Macbeth include Macbeth's "Is this a dagger which I see before me?" and Lady Macbeth's "Out, damned spot!"
19. **Supernatural:**
    - Elements that are beyond the natural world, such as the witches, ghosts, and visions. The supernatural plays a crucial role in Macbeth, influencing the characters' actions and contributing to the play's ominous atmosphere.
20. **Tragedy:**
    - A dramatic genre that involves the downfall of a noble protagonist due to a combination of fate, flaws, and choices. Macbeth is a classic tragedy, with Macbeth's tragic flaw being his ambition.
21. **Tyrant:**
    - A ruler who exercises power unjustly and oppressively. By the end of the play, Macbeth becomes a tyrant, ruling through fear and violence.
22. **Vision:**
    - A mental image or apparition. In Macbeth, visions play an important role, such as Macbeth's vision of a dagger leading him to Duncan's chamber, and the ghost of Banquo.
23. **Witches (Weird Sisters):**
    - Supernatural characters who prophesy Macbeth's rise to power and his downfall. They represent fate, temptation, and the forces of evil that manipulate Macbeth's destiny.
24. **Yielding:**
    - To surrender or give way. Macbeth's yielding to his ambition and his wife's manipulations sets in motion his tragic decline.

This glossary provides an overview of key terms and literary devices in Macbeth, which will help deepen understanding of the play's themes, characters, and dramatic structure.

6.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. **Themes and Characters:**
    1. **Ambition and Power:**
        - How does Macbeth's ambition drive the plot of the play? Do you think he would have become a murderer if he hadn't been encouraged by Lady Macbeth?
        - How does Lady Macbeth's ambition compare to Macbeth's? In what ways is she more ruthless, and how does her ambition affect her fate?
        - At what point does Macbeth begin to lose control over his own actions? How does his sense of power change throughout the play?
    2. **Guilt and Conscience:**
        - How does guilt manifest in both Macbeth and Lady Macbeth? How do their reactions to guilt differ, and what does this say about their characters?
        - Discuss the significance of the hallucinations and visions (e.g., Macbeth seeing Banquo's ghost, Lady Macbeth's sleepwalking). How do these psychological events reflect the characters' internal struggles?
        - What role does guilt play in the eventual downfall of Macbeth and Lady Macbeth? Could their guilt have been avoided?
    3. **Fate vs. Free Will:**
        - Do you believe that Macbeth was destined to become king, or did he create his own fate? How do the witches' prophecies shape his actions?
        - At what point do you think Macbeth starts making choices that lead him to his downfall? Is he acting out of free will, or is he influenced by forces beyond his control?
    4. **Supernatural Elements:**
        - How do the witches and the supernatural influence the characters in Macbeth? Do you think Macbeth would have become king without their prophecy?
        - In what ways do the apparitions and the witches symbolize the forces of chaos and evil in the play?
        - How do the supernatural elements heighten the tension and atmosphere of the play?

Symbolism and Imagery:

5. **Blood:**
    - What does blood symbolize throughout Macbeth? How does it reflect the characters' descent into guilt and moral corruption?
    - How do the repeated references to blood contribute to the play's themes of violence and murder?
6. **Darkness and Light:**
    - Discuss the use of light and darkness in Macbeth. How does the imagery of darkness symbolize Macbeth's moral and psychological state?

- What is the significance of the recurring references to night and shadows in the play?

7. **Sleep:**
   - How is sleep used as a motif in the play? What does it represent for Macbeth and Lady Macbeth, and how does the absence of sleep affect them?
   - How do the characters' inability to sleep reflect their state of mind and the consequences of their actions?

Characterization and Development:

8. **Macbeth's Transformation:**
   - How does Macbeth change from the beginning of the play to the end? What motivates these changes, and what do they reveal about his character?
   - At what point does Macbeth fully embrace his role as a tyrant, and how does his personality evolve from a brave warrior to a fearful king?
9. **Lady Macbeth's Role:**
   - How does Lady Macbeth's attitude toward Macbeth shift throughout the play? What causes this shift, and what does it reveal about her character?
   - In what ways does Lady Macbeth's guilt ultimately lead to her downfall? How does this contrast with Macbeth's increasing ruthlessness?
10. **Macduff and the Fight for Justice:**
    - What role does Macduff play in the play? How does he represent the forces of justice and retribution in the narrative?
    - Why is Macduff's confrontation with Macbeth at the end of the play significant? How does it tie into the larger themes of the play?

Plot and Conflict:

11. **The Murder of King Duncan:**
    - Discuss the significance of King Duncan's murder. How does Macbeth justify his actions, and how does this murder set the tone for the rest of the play?
    - How do the other characters, such as Banquo and Lennox, react to Duncan's murder? How does Macbeth work to conceal his guilt?
12. **The Role of Banquo:**
    - How does Banquo's character serve as a foil to Macbeth's? What do his reactions to the witches' prophecy tell us about him compared to Macbeth?
    - Why do you think Macbeth feels so threatened by Banquo? What does Banquo's ghost represent in the play?
13. **The Final Battle:**
    - How does the final battle between Macbeth and Macduff contribute to the resolution of the play? What does Macbeth's refusal to surrender signify about his character?

- What is the significance of Macduff's statement that "no man of woman born" can harm Macbeth? How does it relate to the theme of fate vs. free will?

Moral and Ethical Questions:

14. **The Corruption of Power:**
    - How does Macbeth explore the corrupting influence of power? Do you think Macbeth's actions are justifiable in any way, or are they purely driven by ambition?
    - In what ways does Macbeth's downfall serve as a cautionary tale about the dangers of unchecked ambition?
15. **Justice and Revenge:**
    - Discuss the theme of justice in the play. How does the play depict the consequences of Macbeth's actions? Is Macbeth's death a form of justice, or does it leave the audience with a sense of moral ambiguity?
    - How do themes of vengeance and retribution shape the course of the plot, especially in relation to Macduff's actions?

Closing Reflection:

16. **Final Thoughts on Fate:**
    - Reflect on the idea of fate and free will in Macbeth. In the end, do you believe that Macbeth could have avoided his tragic fate, or was he doomed from the start?
    - How do the witches' prophecies influence your interpretation of the play's events? Do you see them as controlling forces, or do they merely reveal what Macbeth will choose to do?

These discussion questions allow students to explore the depth of Macbeth, encouraging analysis of its characters, themes, symbols, and moral dilemmas. The questions engage with the complexities of the play, offering opportunities for critical thinking and deeper reflection on the consequences of ambition, guilt, and the pursuit of power.

6.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Fernie, E. (2017). Shakespeare for Freedom: Why the Plays Matter. Cambridge University Press.
2. Harris, Z. (2022). Macbeth (an undoing). [Play adaptation].
3. Kurzel, J. (Director). (2015). Macbeth [Film]. [Note: While the film was released in 2015, analyses and critiques have been published in subsequent years, such as the study by Al-Mansoob & Al-Shaibani (2019).]
4. Al-Mansoob, N. T. A., & Al-Shaibani, G. K. S. (2019). Justin Kurzel's Film Appropriation of William Shakespeare's Macbeth: A Feminist Reading. World Journal of English Language, 9(2), 1-10.
5. Kambash, R. H. (2022). Political Perspective of 'Macbeth'. MI Journal, 1(3), 291-300.

6. Hatfull, R. (2024). Performance review: Macbeth by Max Webster. Cahiers Élisabéthains: A Journal of English Renaissance Studies, 113(1), 73-75.
7. Harris, Z. (2017). This Restless House. [Play adaptation of Aeschylus' Oresteia].
8. Kambash, R. H. (2022). The Dominance of Lady Macbeth on Macbeth's Collapse in Shakespeare's Play. Journal of Namibian Studies, 32, 347-360.
9. Fernie, E., & Palfrey, S. (2016). Macbeth, Macbeth. Bloomsbury Publishing.
10. Weiss, K. (2018). Rapture and Horror: A Phenomenology of Theatrical Invisibility in Macbeth. South-Central Renaissance Conference 2017 William B. Hunter Lecture.

Suggested Books

1. Shakespeare, W. (2003). Macbeth (R. L. Small, Ed.). The Folger Shakespeare Library.
2. Bradley, A. C. (1991). Shakespearean Tragedy: Lectures on Hamlet, Othello, King Lear, and Macbeth. Macmillan.
3. Bloom, H. (2003). Macbeth (Bloom's Modern Critical Interpretations). Chelsea House Publishers.
4. Kermode, F. (2000). Shakespeare's Language. W.W. Norton & Company.
5. Nuttall, A. D. (2003). Shakespeare the Thinker. Yale University Press.
6. Neely, C. T. (2011). Women and Men in Macbeth: A Feminist Approach. Palgrave Macmillan.
7. Muir, K. (2007). Macbeth: A Guide to the Play. Greenwood Press.
8. Miller, R. (2008). Macbeth and the Natural World: An Ecocritical Reading. Routledge.

UNIT 7
THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

Structure:

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The Merchant of Venice is a comedy by William Shakespeare, written between 1596 and 1599. It explores themes of mercy, justice, revenge, and the complexity of human relationships, set against the backdrop of Renaissance Venice. The play is notable for its blend of comedic elements, dramatic tension, and thought-provoking social commentary.

Plot Overview:

The play revolves around Antonio, a merchant in Venice, who borrows money from the Jewish moneylender Shylock in order to help his friend Bassanio. Bassanio wishes to court the wealthy heiress Portia, and he needs the loan to fund his trip to win her hand. However, Antonio's ships, which are supposed to secure his repayment, are delayed, and Shylock demands a pound of Antonio's flesh as collateral for the loan.

Meanwhile, Portia, disguised as a lawyer, intervenes in the trial, where Shylock demands his bond. In a dramatic courtroom scene, Portia outwits Shylock and saves Antonio, leading to a final resolution where Shylock is forced to convert to Christianity and lose his wealth. At the same time, Bassanio and Portia are happily married, and the play concludes with a sense of justice, though not without some moral ambiguity.

Key Themes:

1. **Mercy vs. Justice:**
    - One of the central themes in The Merchant of Venice is the conflict between mercy and justice. The play questions whether justice should always be tempered with mercy or whether strict adherence to the law is more important. The trial scene is a pivotal moment in the exploration of these ideas, with Portia advocating for mercy while Shylock demands justice according to the law.

2. **Prejudice and Discrimination:**
    - The play examines issues of anti-Semitism, particularly through the character of Shylock, a Jewish moneylender. Shylock's treatment by the Christian characters reflects the prejudices of the time, and his desire for revenge highlights the deep animosity between the Jewish and Christian communities. The play raises complex questions about the nature of prejudice, revenge, and forgiveness.
3. **Love and Friendship:**
    - The relationships between Antonio, Bassanio, and Portia provide the emotional heart of the play. Antonio's deep friendship with Bassanio, which leads him to risk his life for him, contrasts with the romantic love story between Bassanio and Portia. The play explores how love and friendship can motivate individuals to act selflessly or lead them into difficult situations.
4. **The Role of Women:**
    - Portia, one of Shakespeare's most intelligent and resourceful heroines, challenges traditional gender roles. Disguised as a lawyer, she exercises power and wisdom, ultimately saving Antonio and teaching both Shylock and the men in the play important lessons about justice and mercy. However, her eventual marriage to Bassanio raises questions about the limitations of female agency in the context of the play's time.

Characters:

- **Antonio:** The merchant of Venice, whose melancholy opens the play. He borrows money from Shylock to help his friend Bassanio.
- **Bassanio:** Antonio's loyal friend, who seeks to win the hand of Portia. His love for her drives much of the action.
- **Portia:** A wealthy heiress with a sharp intellect, who disguises herself as a lawyer to save Antonio in the courtroom.
- **Shylock:** The Jewish moneylender who seeks revenge against Antonio, embodying themes of justice and vengeance.
- **Gratiano:** Bassanio's friend, who is in love with Nerissa, Portia's maid.
- **Nerissa:** Portia's maid, who marries Gratiano.

Setting:

The play is set in Venice, Italy, and Belmont, a fictional location where Portia lives. Venice, at the time, was a major center of trade and commerce, and Shakespeare uses the city's reputation for wealth, law, and justice as a backdrop for the drama. Belmont, with its contrast of peace and wealth, represents a more idealized and harmonious world.

Conclusion:

The Merchant of Venice is a multifaceted play that touches on issues of justice, mercy, love, and prejudice. While it contains moments of comedy, particularly in its romantic subplots and the antics of its secondary characters, it also poses deep moral questions that have made it

one of Shakespeare's more controversial works. The play's exploration of the nature of justice and the consequences of prejudice continues to resonate with audiences today.

7.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of justice, mercy, and prejudice explored in The Merchant of Venice.
2. Understand the complexities of the characters and their motivations, particularly Shylock and Portia.
3. Understand the cultural and historical context of the play and its depiction of societal values.
4. Understand the use of literary devices such as symbolism, irony, and metaphor in the play.
5. Understand the balance between comedic and dramatic elements in shaping the play's narrative and message.

7.3 THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

ACT 1 ┐
┌ Scene 1 ┐
Enter Antonio, Salarino, and Solanio.

ANTONIO
In sooth I know not why I am so sad. It wearies me, you say it wearies you. But how I caught it, found it, or came by it, What stuff 'tis made of, whereof it is born,I am to learn. And such a want-wit sadness makes of me That I have much ado to know myself.
SALARINO
Your mind is tossing on the ocean, There where your argosies with portly sail
(Like signiors and rich burghers on the flood, Or, as it were, the pageants of the sea)
Do overpeer the petty traffickers That curtsy to them, do them reverence, As they fly by the m with their woven wings.
SOLANIO
Believe me, sir, had I such venture forth, The better part of my affections would Be with my hopes abroad. I should be still Plucking the grass to know where sits the wind, Piring in maps for ports and piers and roads;And every object that might make me fear
Misfortune to my ventures, out of doubt Would make me sad.
SALARINO
My wind cooling my broth Would blow me to an ague when I thought
What harm a wind too great might do at sea. I should not see the sandy hourglass run
But I should think of shallows and of flats, And see my wealthy Andrew ┌ docked ┐ in sand,

Vailing her high top lower than her ribs To kiss her burial. Should I go to church
And see the holy edifice of stone And not bethink me straight of dangerous rocks, Which, to uching but my gentle vessel's side, Would scatter all her spices on the stream, Enrobe the roa ring waters with my silks, And, in a word, but even now worth this And now worth nothing? Shall I have the thought To think on this, and shall I lack the thought That such a thing becha nced would make me sad?But tell not me: I know Antonio Is sad to think upon his merchandi se.

ANTONIO

Believe me, no. I thank my fortune for it, My ventures are not in one bottom trusted, Nor to o ne place; nor is my whole estate
Upon the fortune of this present year: Therefore my merchandise makes me not sad.

SOLANIO

Why then you are in love.

ANTONIO

Fie, fie!

SOLANIO

Not in love neither? Then let us say you are sad
Because you are not merry; and 'twere as easy For you to laugh and leap, and say you are me rry Because you are not sad. Now, by two-headed Janus,
Nature hath framed strange fellows in her time:
Some that will evermore peep through their eyes And laugh like parrots at a bagpiper,
And other of such vinegar aspect That they'll not show their teeth in way of smile
Though Nestor swear the jest be laughable. Enter Bassanio, Lorenzo, and Gratiano**.**
Here comes Bassanio, your most noble kinsman, Gratiano, and Lorenzo. Fare you well.
We leave you now with better company.

SALARINO

I would have stayed till I had made you merry, If worthier friends had not prevented me.

ANTONIO

Your worth is very dear in my regard. I take it your own business calls on you,
And you embrace th' occasion to depart.

SALARINO

Good morrow, my good lords**.**

BASSANIO

Good signiors both, when shall we laugh? Say,
when? You grow exceeding strange. Must it be so?

SALARINO

We'll make our leisures to attend on yours.
Salarino and Solanio exit.

LORENZO

My Lord Bassanio, since you have found Antonio, We two will leave you. But at dinner time I pray you have in mind where we must meet.

BASSANIO

I will not fail you.

GRATIANO

You look not well, Signior Antonio. You have too much respect upon the world.
They lose it that do buy it with much care. Believe me, you are marvelously changed.

ANTONIO

I hold the world but as the world, Gratiano, A stage where every man must play a part,
And mine a sad one.

GRATIANO

Let me play the fool.
With mirth and laughter let old wrinkles come, and let my liver rather heat with wine Than m y heart cool with mortifying groans. Why should a man whose blood is warm within Sit like his grandsire cut in alabaster?
Sleep when he wakes? And creep into the jaundice by being peevish? I tell thee what, Antoni o (I love thee, and 'tis my love that speaks): There are a sort of men whose visages Do cream and mantle like a standing pond And do a willful stillness entertain
With purpose to be dressed in an opinion Of wisdom, gravity, profound conceit, As who sho uld say "I am Sir Oracle, And when I ope my lips, let no dog bark."
O my Antonio, I do know of these That therefore only are reputed wise For saying nothing, w hen, I am very sure, If they should speak, would almost damn those ears Which, hearing them , would call their brothers fools. I'll tell thee more of this another time.
But fish not with this melancholy bait For this fool gudgeon, this opinion.— Come, good Lor enzo.—Fare you well a while. I'll end my exhortation after dinner.

LORENZO

Well, we will leave you then till dinner time. I must be one of these same dumb wise men,
For Gratiano never lets me speak.

GRATIANO

Well, keep me company but two years more, Thou shalt not know the sound of thine own tongue.

ANTONIO

Fare you well. I'll grow a talker for this gear.

GRATIANO

Thanks, i' faith, for silence is only commendable In a neat's tongue dried and a maid not ven dible. ⌜ Gratiano and Lorenzo ⌝ exit.

ANTONIO

Is that anything now?

BASSANIO

Gratiano speaks an infinite deal of nothing,
more than any man in all Venice. His reasons are as two grains of wheat hid in two bushels o f chaff: you shall seek all day ere you find them, and when you
have them, they are not worth the search.

ANTONIO

Well, tell me now what lady is the same
To whom you swore a secret pilgrimage,
That you today promised to tell me of?

BASSANIO

'Tis not unknown to you, Antonio,

How much I have disabled mine estate
By something showing a more swelling port
Than my faint means would grant continuance. Nor do I now make moan to be abridged
From such a noble rate. But my chief care
Is to come fairly off from the great debts
Wherein my time, something too prodigal,
Hath left me gaged. To you, Antonio,
I owe the most in money and in love,
And from your love I have a warranty
To unburden all my plots and purposes
How to get clear of all the debts I owe.

ANTONIO

I pray you, good Bassanio, let me know it;
And if it stand, as you yourself still do,
Within the eye of honor, be assured
My purse, my person, my extremest means
Lie all unlocked to your occasions.

BASSANIO

In my school days, when I had lost one shaft, I shot his fellow of the selfsame flight
The selfsame way with more advisèd watch
To find the other forth; and by adventuring both I oft found both. I urge this childhood proof
Because what follows is pure innocence.
I owe you much, and, like a willful youth,
That which I owe is lost. But if you please
To shoot another arrow that self-way
Which you did shoot the first, I do not doubt,
As I will watch the aim, or to find both
Or bring your latter hazard back again,
And thankfully rest debtor for the first.

ANTONIO

You know me well, and herein spend but time
To wind about my love with circumstance;
And out of doubt you do me now more wrong In making question of my uttermost
Than if you had made waste of all I have.
Then do but say to me what I should do
That in your knowledge may by me be done,
And I am prest unto it. Therefore speak.

BASSANIO

In Belmont is a lady richly left,
And she is fair, and, fairer than that word,
Of wondrous virtues. Sometimes from her eyes I did receive fair speechless messages.
Her name is Portia, nothing undervalued
To Cato’s daughter, Brutus’ Portia.

Nor is the wide world ignorant of her worth,
For the four winds blow in from every coast
Renownèd suitors, and her sunny locks
Hang on her temples like a golden fleece,
Which makes her seat of Belmont Colchos' strond,
And many Jasons come in quest of her.
O my Antonio, had I but the means
To hold a rival place with one of them,
I have a mind presages me such thrift
That I should questionless be fortunate!

ANTONIO

Thou know'st that all my fortunes are at sea; Neither have I money nor commodity
To raise a present sum. Therefore, go forth:
Try what my credit can in Venice do;
That shall be racked even to the uttermost
To furnish thee to Belmont to fair Portia.
Go presently inquire, and so will I,
Where money is, and I no question make
To have it of my trust, or for my sake.
They exit.

⌜ Scene 2 ⌝

Enter Portia with her waiting woman Nerissa.

PORTIA

By my troth, Nerissa, my little body is aweary of this great world.

NERISSA

You would be, sweet madam, if your miseries
were in the same abundance as your good fortunesare. And yet, for aught I see, they are as si ck that surfeit with too much as they that starve with nothing. It is no mean happiness, therefo re, to be seated in the mean. Superfluity comes sooner by white hairs, but competency lives lo nger.

PORTIA

Good sentences, and well pronounced.

NERISSA

They would be better if well followed.

PORTIA

If to do were as easy as to know what were
good to do, chapels had been churches, and poor men's cottages princes' palaces. It is a good divine
that follows his own instructions. I can easier teach twenty what were good to be done than to be one of the twenty to follow my own teaching. The brain may devise laws for the blood, bu t a hot temper leaps o'er a cold decree: such a hare is madness the
youth, to skip o'er the meshes of good counsel the cripple. But this reasoning is not in the fas hion to choose me a husband. O, me, the word "chooses"! I may neither choose who I would

nor refuse who I dislike. So is the will of a living daughter curbed by
the will of a dead father. Is it not hard, Nerissa, that I cannot choose one, nor refuse none?

NERISSA

Your father was ever virtuous, and holy men
at their death have good inspirations. Therefore, the lottery that he hath devised in these three chests of
gold, silver, and lead, whereof who chooses his meaning chooses you, will no doubt never be chosen by any rightly but one who you shall rightly love. But what warmth is there in your affection towards any of these princely suitors that are already come?

PORTIA

I pray thee, over name them, and as thou
namest them, I will describe them, and according to my description level at my affection.

NERISSA

First, there is the Neapolitan prince.

PORTIA

Ay, that's a colt indeed, for he doth nothing but talk of his horse, and he makes it a great appropriation to his own good parts that he can shoe him himself. I am much afeard my lady his mother played false with a smith.

NERISSA

Then is there the County Palatine.

PORTIA

He doth nothing but frown, as who should say "An you will not have me, choose." He hears merry tales and smiles not. I fear he will prove the weeping philosopher when he grows old, being so full of unmannerly sadness in his youth. I had rather be married to a death's-
head with a bone in his mouth than to either of these. God defend me from these two!

NERISSA

How say you by the French lord, Monsieur Le

PORTIA

God made him, and therefore let him pass for a man. In truth, I know it is a sin to be a mocker, but he! —
why, he hath a horse better than the Neapolitan's, a better bad habit of frowning than
the Count Palatine. He is every man in no man. If a ⌜ throstle ⌝ sing, he falls straight a-
cap'ring. He will fence with his own shadow. If I should marry him, I should marry twenty husbands! If he would despise me, I would forgive him, for if he loves me to
madness, I shall never requite him.

NERISSA

What say you then to Falconbridge, the young baron of England?

PORTIA

You know I say nothing to him, for he understands not me, nor I him. He hath neither Latin, French, nor Italian; and you will come into the court and swear that I have a poor pennyworth
in the English. He is a proper man's picture, but alas, who can converse with a dumb show?
How oddly he is suited! I think he bought his doublet in Italy,
his round hose in France, his bonnet in Germany**,** and his behavior everywhere.

NERISSA

What think you of the Scottish lord, his
neighbor?

PORTIA

That he hath a neighborly charity in him, for
he borrowed a box of the ear of the Englishman, and swore he would pay him again when he was able. I think the Frenchman became his surety and sealed under for another.

NERISSA

How like you the young German, the Duke of
Saxony's nephew?

PORTIA

Very vilely in the morning, when he is sober,
and most vilely in the afternoon, when he is drunk. When he is best, he is a little worse than a man, and when he is worst, he is little better than a beast. Anthe worst fall that ever fell, I h ope I shall make shift to go without him.

NERISSA

If he should offer to choose, and choose the
right casket, you should refuse to perform your father's will if you should refuse to accept hi m.

PORTIA

Therefore, for fear of the worst, I pray thee set a deep glass of Rhenish wine on the contrary c asket, for if the devil be within and that temptation without, I know he will choose it. I will do anything, Nerissa, ere I will be married to a sponge.

NERISSA

You need not fear, lady, the having any of
these lords. They have acquainted me with their determinations, which is indeed to return to t heir home and to trouble you with no more suit, unless you may be won by some other sort th an your father's imposition depending on the caskets.

PORTIA

If I live to be as old as Sibylla, I will die as
chaste as Diana unless I be obtained by the manner of my father's will. I am glad this parcel of wooers is so reasonable, for there is not one among them
but I dote on his very absence. And I pray God grant them a fair departure!

NERISSA

Do you not remember, lady, in your father's
time, a Venetian, a scholar and a soldier, that came hither in company of the Marquess of Mo ntferrat?

PORTIA

Yes, yes, it was Bassanio—as I think so was, he called.

NERISSA

True, madam. He, of all the men that ever my
foolish eyes looked upon, was the best deserving a fair lady.

PORTIA

I remember him well, and I remember him
worthy of thy praise. Enter a Serving man.

How now, what news?

SERVINGMAN

The four strangers seek for you, madam,
to take their leave. And there is a forerunner come
from a fifth, the Prince of Morocco, who brings word the prince his master will be here tonig ht.

PORTIA

If I could bid the fifth welcome with so good
heart as I can bid the other four farewell, I should be glad of his approach. If he has the condi tion of saint and the complexion of a devil, I had rather he should shrive me than wive me. C ome, Nerissa. ⌜ To Serving man.
⌝ Sirrah, go before. Whiles we shut the gate upon one wooer, other knocks at the door.
They exit.

Scene 3

Enter Bassanio with Shylock the Jew.

SHYLOCK

Three thousand ducats, well.

BASSANIO

Ay, sir, for three months**.**

SHYLOCK

For three months, well.

BASSANIO

For the which, as I told you, Antonio shall
be bound.

SHYLOCK

Antonio shall become bound, well.

BASSANIO

May your stead me? Will you pleasure me?
Shall I know your answer?

SHYLOCK

Three thousand ducats for three months,
and Antonio bound.

BASSANIO

Your answer to that?

SHYLOCK

Antonio is a good man.

BASSANIO

Have you heard any imputation to the
contrary?

SHYLOCK

Ho, no, no, no, no! My meaning in saying he
is a good man is to have you understand me that he is sufficient. Yet his means are in suppos

ition: he hath an argosy bound to Tripolis, another to the Indies. I understand, moreover, upon the Rialto,
he hath a third at Mexico, a fourth for England, and other ventures he hath squandered abroad . But ships are but boards, sailors but men; there be land rats and water rats, water thieves and land thieves—I mean pirates—and then there is the
peril of waters, winds, and rocks. The man is, notwithstanding, sufficient. Three thousand duc ats. I think I may take his bond.

BASSANIO

Be assured you may.

SHYLOCK

I will be assured I may. And that I may be
assured, I will bethink me. May I speak with
Antonio?

BASSANIO

If it please you to dine with us.

SHYLOCK

Yes, to smell pork! To eat of the habitation
which your prophet the Nazarite conjured the
devil into! I will buy with you, sell with you, talk with you, walk with you, and so following; but I will not eat with you, drink with you, nor pray with you.— hat news on the Rialto?— Who is he comes
here? Enter Antonio.

BASSANIO

This is Signior Antonio.

SHYLOCK,

How like a fawning publican he looks!
I hate him for he is a Christian, But more for that in low simplicity He lends out money grati s and brings down The rate of usance here with us in Venice.
If I can catch him once upon the hip, I will feed fat the ancient grudge I bear him.
He hates our sacred nation, and he rails,
Even there where merchants most do congregate, On me, my bargains, and my well-won thrift, Which he calls “interest.” Cursèd be my tribe If I forgive him!

BASSANIO

Shylock, do you hear?

SHYLOCK

I am debating of my present store,
And, by the near guess of my memory,
I cannot instantly raise up the gross
Of full three thousand ducats. What of that?
Tubal, a wealthy Hebrew of my tribe,
Will furnish me. But soft, how many months
Do you desire? To Antonio. Rest you fair, good signior! Your Worship was the last man in o ur mouths.

ANTONIO

Shylock, albeit I neither lend nor borrow
By taking nor by giving of excess, Yet, to supply the ripe wants of my friend,
I'll break a custom. To Bassanio. Is he yet
possessed How much you would?

SHYLOCK

Ay, ay, three thousand ducats.

ANTONIO

And for three months.

SHYLOCK

I had forgot—three months. To Bassanio.
You told me so. —
Well then, your bond. And let me see—but hear you:
Methoughts you said you neither lend nor borrow Upon advantage.

ANTONIO

I do never use it.

SHYLOCK

When Jacob grazed his Uncle Laban's sheep—
This Jacob from our holy Abram was
(As his wise mother wrought in his behalf)
The third possessor; ay, he was the third—

ANTONIO

And what of him? Did he take interest?

SHYLOCK

No, not take interest, not, as you would say,
Directly "interest." Mark what Jacob did.
When Laban and himself were compromised
That all the eanlings which were streaked and pied Should fall as Jacob's hire, the ewes bein g rank In end of autumn turnèd to the rams, And when the work of generation was
Between these woolly breeders in the act,
The skillful shepherd pilled me certain wands, And in the doing of the deed of kind
He stuck them up before the fulsome ewes,
Who then conceiving did in eaning time
Fall parti-colored lambs, and those were Jacob's.
This was a way to thrive, and he was blest;
And thrift is blessing if men steal it not.

ANTONIO

This was a venture, sir, that Jacob served for, A thing not in his power to bring to pass,
But swayed and fashioned by the hand of heaven. Was this inserted to make interest good? O r is your gold and silver ewes and rams?

SHYLOCK

I cannot tell; I make it breed as fast.
But note me, signior—

ANTONIO

Mark you this, Bassanio, The devil can cite Scripture for his purpose!

An evil soul producing holy witness
Is like a villain with a smiling cheek,
A goodly apple rotten at the heart.
O, what a goodly outside falsehood hath!

SHYLOCK

Three thousand ducats. 'Tis a good round sum.
Three months from twelve, then let me see, the rate—

ANTONIO

Well, Shylock, shall we be beholding to you?

SHYLOCK

Signior Antonio, many a time and oft
In the Rialto you have rated me
About my moneys and my usances.
Still have I borne it with a patient shrug
(For suff'rance is the badge of all our tribe).
You call me misbeliever, cutthroat dog,
And spet upon my Jewish gaberdine,
And all for use of that which is mine own.
Well then, it now appears you need my help.
Go to, then. You come to me and you say
"Shylock, we would have moneys"—
you say so, You, that did void your rheum upon my beard, And foot me as you spurn a strang er cur Over your threshold. Moneys is your suit. What should I say to you? Should I not say
"Hath a dog money? Is it possible A cur can lend three thousand ducats?" Or Shall I bend lo w, and in a bondman's key, With bated breath and whisp'ring humbleness,
Say this: "Fair sir, you spet on me on Wednesday last; You spurned me such a day; another ti me You called me 'dog'; and for these courtesies I'll lend you thus much moneys"?

ANTONIO

I am as like to call thee so again,
To spet on thee again, to spurn thee, too. If thou wilt lend this money, lend it not As to thy fri ends, for when did friendship take A breed for barren metal of his friend?
But lend it rather to thine enemy, Who, if he break, thou mayst with better face Exact the pen alty.

SHYLOCK

Why, look you how you storm! I would be friends with you and have your love,
Forget the shames that you have stained me with, Supply your present wants, and take no doit
Of usance for my moneys, and you'll not hear me! This is kind I offer.

BASSANIO

This were kindness!

SHYLOCK

This kindness will I show. Go with me to a notary, seal me there Your single bond; and in a merry sport, If you repay me not on such a day, In such a place, such sum or sums as are Expressed in the condition, let the forfeit
Be nominated for an equal pound Of your fair flesh, to be cut off and taken In what part of y

our body pleaseth me.

ANTONIO

Content, in faith. I'll seal to such a bond,
And say there is much kindness in the Jew.

BASSANIO

You shall not seal to such a bond for me!
I'll rather dwell in my necessity.

ANTONIO

Why, fear not, man, I will not forfeit it!
Within these two months—that's a month before This bond expires—
I do expect return Of thrice three times the value of this bond.

SHYLOCK

O father Abram, what these Christians are,
Whose own hard dealings teaches them suspect The thoughts of others! Pray you tell me this : If he should break his day, what should I gain
By the exaction of the forfeiture? A pound of man's flesh taken from a man Is not so estimabl e, profitable neither, As flesh of muttons, beefs, or goats. I say,
To buy his favor I extend this friendship.
If he will take it, so. If not, adieu; And for my love I pray you wrong me not.

ANTONIO

Yes, Shylock, I will seal unto this bond**.**

SHYLOCK

Then meet me forthwith at the notary's.
Give him direction for this merry bond,
And I will go and purse the ducats straight,
See to my house left in the fearful guard
Of an unthrifty knave, and presently
I'll be with you.

ANTONIO

Hie thee, gentle Jew.⌜ Shylock ⌝exits. The Hebrew will turn Christian; he grows kind.

BASSANIO

I like not fair terms and a villain's mind.

ANTONIO

Come on, in this there can be no dismay;
My ships come home a month before the day.
They exit.

⌜ ACT 2 ⌝

⌜ Scene 1 ⌝

Enter⌜ the Prince of ⌝Morocco, a tawny Moor all in
white, and three or four followers accordingly, with Portia, Nerissa, and their train.

MOROCCO

Mislike me not for my complexion, The shadowed livery of the burnished sun,
To whom I am a neighbor and near bred.

Bring me the fairest creature northward born, Where Phoebus' fire scarce thaws the icicles,
And let us make incision for your love To prove whose blood is reddest, his or mine.
I tell thee, lady, this aspect of mine
Hath feared the valiant; by my love I swear
The best regarded virgins of our clime Have loved it too. I would not change this hue
Except to steal your thoughts, my gentle queen.

PORTIA

In terms of choice I am not solely led
By nice direction of a maiden's eyes;
Besides, the lott'ry of my destiny
Bars me the right of voluntary choosing.
But if my father had not scanted me
And hedged me by his wit to yield myself
His wife who wins me by that means I told you, Yourself, renownèd prince, then stood as fair
As any comer I have looked on yet For my affection.

MOROCCO

Even for that I thank you. Therefore, I pray you lead me to the caskets
To try my fortune. By this scimitar That slew the Sophy and a Persian prince,
That won three fields of Sultan Solyman,
I would o'erstare the sternest eyes that look,
Outbrave the heart most daring on the Earth,
Pluck the young sucking cubs from the she-bear, Yea, mock the lion when he roars for prey,
To win ⌜ thee, ⌝ lady. But, alas the while!
If Hercules and Lychas play at dice
Which is the better man, the greater throw
May turn by fortune from the weaker hand;
So is Alcides beaten by his ⌜ page, ⌝
And so may I, blind Fortune leading me,
Miss that which one unworthier may attain,
And die with grieving.

PORTIA

You must take your chance And either not attempt to choose at all
Or swear before you choose, if you choose wrong Never to speak to lady afterward
In way of marriage. Therefore, be advised.

MOROCCO

Nor will not. Come, bring me unto my chance.

PORTIA

First, forward to the temple. After dinner
Your hazard shall be made.

MOROCCO

Good fortune then, To make me blest—or cursed'st among men! They exit.

⌜ Scene 2 ⌝

Enter ⌜ Lancelet Gobbo ⌝ the Clown, alone.

LANCELET

Certainly my conscience will serve me to
run from this Jew my master. The fiend is at mine
elbow and tempts me, saying to me "Gobbo,
Lancelet Gobbo, good Lancelet," or "good Gobbo,"
or "good Lancelet Gobbo, use your legs, take
the start, run away." My conscience says "No. Take
heed, honest Lancelet, take heed, honest Gobbo,"
or, as aforesaid, "honest Lancelet Gobbo, do not
run; scorn running with thy heels." Well, the most
courageous fiend bids me pack. "Fia!" says the
fiend. "Away!" says the fiend. "For the heavens,
rouse up a brave mind," says the fiend, "and run!"
Well, my conscience, hanging about the neck of my
heart, says very wisely to me "My honest friend Lancelet, being an honest man's son"—
or rather, an honest woman's son, for indeed my father did
something smack, something grow to—he had a kind of taste—
well, my conscience says "Lancelet,
budge not." "Budge," says the fiend. "Budge not,"
says my conscience. "Conscience," say I, "youcounsel well." "Fiend," say I, "you counsel we
ll." To be ruled by my conscience, I should stay with the
Jew my master, who (God bless the mark) is a kind
of devil; and to run away from the Jew, I should be
ruled by the fiend, who (saving your reverence) is
the devil himself. Certainly the Jew is the very devil
incarnation, and, in my conscience, my conscience
is but a kind of hard conscience to offer to counsel
me to stay with the Jew. The fiend gives the more
friendly counsel. I will run, fiend. My heels are at your commandment. I will run.
Enter old Gobbo with a basket.

GOBBO

Master young man, you, I pray you, which is the way to Master Jew's?

LANCELET

O heavens, this is my true begotten father, who being more than sandblind, high gravelblind,
knows me not. I will try confusions with him.

GOBBO

Master young gentleman, I pray you, which is the way to Master Jew's?

LANCELET

Turn up on your right hand at the next
turning, but at the next turning of all on your left;
marry, at the very next turning, turn of no hand, but turn down indirectly to the Jew's house.

GOBBO

Be God's sonties, 'twill be a hard way to hit.
Can you tell me whether one Lancelet, that dwells
with him, dwell with him or no?

LANCELET

Talk you of young Master Lancelet? ⌜ Aside. ⌝
Mark me now, now will I raise the waters.—Talk
you of young Master Lancelet?

GOBBO

No master, sir, but a poor man's son. His
father, though I say 't, is an honest exceeding poor
man and, God be thanked, well to live.

LANCELET

Well, let his father be what he will, we talk
of young Master Lancelet.

GOBBO

Your Worship's friend, and Lancelet, sir.

LANCELET

But I pray you, ergo, old man, ergo, I beseech
you, tell you of young Master Lancelet?

GOBBO

Of Lancelet, an 't please your mastership.

LANCELET

Ergo, Master Lancelet. Talk not of Master
Lancelet, father, for the young gentleman, according
to Fates and Destinies, and such odd sayings, the
Sisters Three, and such branches of learning, is
indeed deceased, or, as you would say in plain terms, gone to heaven.

GOBBO

Marry, God forbid! The boy was the very staff of my age, my very prop.

LANCELET

Do I look like a cudgel or a hovel-post,
a staff or a prop? —Do you know me, father?

GOBBO

Alack the day, I know you not, young gentleman. But I pray you tell me, is my boy, God rest his soul, alive or dead?

LANCELET

Do you not know me, father?

GOBBO

Alack, sir, I am sandblind. I know you not.

LANCELET

Nay, indeed, if you had your eyes, you might
fail of the knowing me. It is a wise father that
knows his own child. Well, old man, I will tell you
news of your son. ⌜ He kneels. ⌝ Give me your blessing.

Truth will come to light, murder cannot be hid long—
a man's son may, but in the end, truth will
out.

GOBBO

Pray you, sir, stand up! I am sure you are not Lancelet my boy.

LANCELET

Pray you, let's have no more fooling about
it, but give me your blessing. I am Lancelet, your
boy that was, your son that is, your child that shall be.

GOBBO

I cannot think you are my son.

LANCELET

I know not what I shall think of that; but I
am Lancelet, the Jew's man, and I am sure Margery your wife is my mother.

GOBBO

Her name is Margery, indeed. I'll be sworn if thou be Lancelet, thou art mine own flesh and b lood. Lord worshiped might He be, what a beard hast thou got! Thou hast got more hair on th y chin than Dobbin my fill-horse has on his tail.

LANCELET

It should seem, then, that Dobbin's tail grows backward. I am sure he had more hair of his tai l than I have of my face when I
⌜ last ⌝ saw him.

GOBBO

Lord, how art thou changed! How dost thou
and thy master agree? I have brought him a present. How 'gree you now?

LANCELET

Well, well. But for mine own part, as I have
set up my rest to run away, so I will not rest till I have run some ground. My master's a very Jew. Give him a present! Give him a halter. I am
famished in his service. You may tell every finger I have with my ribs. Father, I am glad you are come!
Give me your present to one Master Bassanio, who indeed gives rare new liveries. If I serve not him, I will run as far as God has any ground. O rare fortune, here comes the man! To him, father, for I am a Jew if I serve the Jew any longer.

Enter Bassanio with ⌜ Leonardo and ⌝ a follower or two.

BASSANIO

You may do so, but let it be so hasted that supper be ready at the farthest by five of the clocks . See these letters delivered, put the liveries to making, and desire Gratiano to come anon to my lodging. ⌜ The Attendant exits. ⌝

LANCELET

To him, father.

GOBBO,

God bless your Worship.

BASSANIO

Gramercy. Wouldst thou aught with me?

GOBBO

Here's my son, sir, a poor boy—

LANCELET

Not a poor boy, sir, but the rich Jew's man,
that would, sir, as my father shall specify—

GOBBO

He hath a great infection, sir, as one would say, to serve—

LANCELET

Indeed, the short and the long is, I serve the
Jew, and have a desire, as my father shall specify—

GOBBO

His master and he (saving your Worship's
reverence) are scarce cater-cousins—

LANCELET

To be brief, the very truth is that the Jew,
having done me wrong, doth cause me, as my father being, I hope, an old man, shall frutify u nto you—

GOBBO

I have here a dish of doves that I would bestow upon your Worship, and my suit is—

LANCELET

In very brief, the suit is impertinent to myself, as your Worship shall know by this honest old man, and though I say it, though old man yet poor man, my father—

BASSANIO

One speak for both. What would you?

LANCELET

Serve you, sir.

GOBBO

That is the very defect of the matter, sir.

BASSANIO

I know thee well. Thou hast obtained thy suit. Shylock thy master spoke with me this day, An d hath preferred thee, if it be preferment To leave a rich Jew's service, to become
The follower of so poor a gentleman.

LANCELET

The old proverb is very well parted between
my master Shylock and you, sir: you have "the grace of God," sir, and he hath "enough."

BASSANIO

Thou speak'st it well.—Go, father, with thy son.—
Take leave of thy old master, and inquire
My lodging out. ⌜ To an Attendant. ⌝ Give him a livery More guarded than his fellows'. See it done. ⌜ Attendant exits. Bassanio and Leonardo talk apart. ⌝

LANCELET

Father, in. I cannot get a service, no! I have ne'er a tongue in my head! Well, ⌜ studying his p alm ⌝ if any man in Italy has a fairer table which doth offer to swear upon a book—

I shall have good fortune, go to! Here's a simple line of life. Here's a
160 small trifle of wives—
alas, fifteen wives is nothing; eleven widows and nine maids is a simple coming-
in for one man—and then to 'scape drowning
thrice, and to be in peril of my life with the edge of a featherbed! Here are simple 'scapes. W
ell, if Fortune
be a woman, she's a good wench for this gear. Father, come. I'll take my leave of the Jew in t
he twinkling. ⌜ Lancelet and old Gobbo ⌝ exit.

BASSANIO

I pray thee, good Leonardo, think on this.
⌜ Handing him a paper. ⌝
These things being bought and orderly bestowed, Return in haste, for I do feast tonight
My best esteemed acquaintance. Hie thee, go.

LEONARDO

My best endeavors shall be done herein.
Enter Gratiano.

GRATIANO

Where's your master?

LEONARDO

Yonder, sir, he walks.Leonardo exits.

GRATIANO

Signior Bassanio!

BASSANIO

Gratiano!

GRATIANO

I have suit to you.

BASSANIO

You have obtained it.

GRATIANO

You must not deny me. I must go with you
to Belmont.

BASSANIO

Why then you must. But hear thee, Gratiano,
Thou art too wild, too rude and bold of voice—
Parts that become thee happily enough,
And in such eyes as ours appear not faults.
185 But where thou art not known—
why, there they show Something too liberal. Pray thee take pain To allay with some cold drop
s of modesty Thy skipping spirit, lest through thy wild behavior I be misconstered in the plac
e I go to, And lose my hopes.

GRATIANO

Signior Bassanio, hear me. If I do not put on a sober habit, Talk with respect, and swear but n
ow and then, Wear prayer books in my pocket, look demurely, Nay more, while grace is sayi

ng, hood mine eyes Thus with my hat, and sigh and say “amen,” Use all the observance of civ ility Like one well studied in a sad ostent To please his grandam, never trust me more.

BASSANIO

Well, we shall see your bearing.

GRATIANO

Nay, but I bar tonight. You shall not gauge me By what we do tonight.

BASSANIO

No, that were pity. I would entreat you rather to put on Your boldest suit of mirth, for we hav e friends That purpose merriment. But fare you well. I have some business**.**

GRATIANO

And I must to Lorenzo and the rest.
But we will visit you at supper time.
They exit.

┌ Scene 3 ┐

Enter Jessica and┌ Lancelet Gobbo. ┐

JESSICA

I am sorry thou wilt leave my father so.
Our house is hell and thou, a merry devil,
Didst rob it of some taste of tediousness.
But fare thee well. There is a ducat for thee,
And, Lancelet, soon at supper shalt thou see Lorenzo, who is thy new master’s guest.
Give him this letter, do it secretly,
And so farewell. I would not have my father
See me in talk with thee.

LANCELET

Adieu. Tears exhibit my tongue, most beautiful pagan, most sweet Jew. If a Christian do not play the knave and get thee, I am much deceived. But adieu. These foolish drops do somethin g drown my manly spirit. Adieu.

JESSICA

Farewell, good Lancelet.┌ Lancelet exits. ┐
Alack, what heinous sin is it in me To be ashamed to be my father’s child? But though I am a daughter to his blood, I am not to his manners. O Lorenzo, If thou keep promise, I shall end t his strife, Become a Christian and thy loving wife. She exits.

┌ Scene 4 ┐

Enter Gratiano, Lorenzo, Salarino, and Solanio.

LORENZO

Nay, we will slink away in supper time,
Disguise us at my lodging, and return
All in an hour.

GRATIANO

We have not made good preparation.
SALARINO
We have not spoke us yet of torchbearers.
SOLANIO
Tis vile, unless it may be quaintly ordered,
And better in my mind not undertook.
LORENZO
Tis now but four o'clock. We have two hours
To furnish us. Enter Lancelet. Friend Lancelet, what's the news?
LANCELET
An it shall please you to break up this, it
shall seem to signify. Handing him Jessica's letter. ⌝
LORENZO
I know the hand; in faith, 'tis a fair hand,
And whiter than the paper it writ on
Is the fair hand that writ.
GRATIANO
Love news, in faith!
LANCELET
By your leave, sir.
LORENZO
Whither goest thou?
LANCELET
Marry, sir, to bid my old master the Jew to
sup tonight with my new master the Christian.
LORENZO
Hold here, take this.⌜ Giving him money.
⌝Tell gentle Jessica, I will not fail her. Speak it privately. Lancelet ⌝exits. Go, gentlemen,
Will you prepare you for this masque tonight? I am provided of a torchbearer.
SALARINO
Ay, marry, I'll be gone about it straight.
SOLANIO
And so will I.
LORENZO
Meet me and Gratiano At Gratiano's lodging some hour hence.
SALARINO
Tis good we do so.⌜ Salarino and Solanio ⌝exit.
GRATIANO
Was not that letter from fair Jessica?
LORENZO
I must needs tell thee all. She hath directed
How I shall take her from her father's house,
What gold and jewels she is furnished with,
What page's suit she hath in readiness.

If e'er the Jew her father come to heaven,
It will be for his gentle daughter's sake;
And never dare misfortune cross her foot
Unless she do it under this excuse,
That she is issue to a faithless Jew.
Come, go with me. Peruse this as thou goest;
⌜ Handing him the letter. ⌝ Fair Jessica shall be my torchbearer. They ⌝ exit.

⌜ Scene 5 ⌝

Enter⌜ Shylock, the ⌝ Jew, and⌜ Lancelet, ⌝
his man that was, the Clown.

SHYLOCK

Well, thou shalt see, thy eyes shall be thy judge, The difference of old Shylock and Bassanio**.**
— What, Jessica!—Thou shalt not gormandize As thou hast done with me—
what, Jessica!— And sleep, and snore, and rend apparel out.— Why, Jessica, I say!

LANCELET

Why, Jessica!

SHYLOCK

Who bids thee call? I do not bid thee call.

LANCELET

Your Worship was wont to tell me I could
do nothing without bidding. Enter Jessica.

JESSICA

Call you? What is your will?

SHYLOCK

I am bid forth to supper, Jessica.
There are my keys.—But wherefore should I go?
I am not bid for love. They flatter me.
But yet I'll go in hate, to feed upon
The prodigal Christian.—Jessica, my girl,
Look to my house.—I am right loath to go.
There is some ill a-brewing towards my rest,
For I did dream of money bags tonight.

LANCELET

I beseech you, sir, go. My young master
doth expect your reproach.

SHYLOCK

So do I his.

LANCELET

And they have conspired together—I will
not say you shall see a masque, but if you do, then it was not for nothing that my nose fell a-bleeding on Black Monday last, at six o'clock i' th' morning, falling out that year on Ash We dnesday was four years in th' afternoon.

SHYLOCK

What, are there masques? Hear you me, Jessica, Lock up my doors, and when you hear the d rum And the vile squealing of the wry-
necked fife, Clamber not you up to the casements then, Nor thrust your head into the public st reet To gaze on Christian fools with varnished faces, But stop my house's ears (I mean my ca sements). Let not the sound of shallow fopp'ry enter My sober house. By Jacob's staff I swea r I have no mind of feasting forth tonight. But I will go. —
Go you before me, sirrah. Say I will come.

LANCELET

I will go before, sir.⌜ Aside to Jessica. ⌝Mistress, look out at window for all this. There will come a Christian by Will be worth a⌜ Jewess' ⌝eye.⌜ He exits. ⌝

SHYLOCK

What says that fool of Hagar's offspring, ha?

JESSICA

His words were "Farewell, mistress," nothing else.

SHYLOCK

The patch is kind enough, but a huge feeder, Snail-slow in profit, and he sleeps by day
More than the wildcat. Drones hive not with me, Therefore I part with him, and part with hi m To one that I would have him help to waste His borrowed purse. Well, Jessica, go in. Perha ps I will return immediately. Do as I bid you. Shut doors after you.
Fast bind, fast find— A proverb never stale in thrifty mind**.** He exits.

JESSICA

Farewell, and if my fortune be not crossed,
I have a father, you a daughter, lost. She exits.

⌜ Scene 6 ⌝

Enter the masquers, Gratiano and Salarino.

GRATIANO

This is the penthouse under which Lorenzo
Desired us to make stand.

SALARINO

His hour is almost past.

GRATIANO

And it is marvel he outdwells his hour,
For lovers ever run before the clock.

SALARINO

O, ten times faster Venus' pigeons fly To seal love's bonds new-ade than they are wont
To keep obligèd faith unforfeited.

GRATIANO

That ever holds. Who riseth from a feast
With that keen appetite that he sits down?
Where is the horse that doth untread again
His tedious measures with the unbated fire

That he did pace them first? All things that are, Are with more spirit chasèd than enjoyed. How like a younger or a prodigal The scarfèd bark puts from her native bay, Hugged and embracèd by the strumpet wind; How like the prodigal doth she return With overweathered ribs and raggèd sails, Lean, rent, and beggared by the strumpet wind!

Enter Lorenzo.

SALARINO

Here comes Lorenzo. More of this hereafter.

LORENZO

Sweet friends, your patience for my long abode. Not I but my affairs have made you wait. When you shall please to play the thieves for wives, I'll watch as long for you then. Approach. Here dwells my father Jew.—Ho! Who's within?

⌜ Enter ⌝ Jessica above, ⌜ dressed as a boy. ⌝

JESSICA

Who are you? Tell me for more certainty,
Albeit I'll swear that I do know your tongue.

LORENZO

Lorenzo, and thy love**.**

JESSICA

Lorenzo certain, and my love indeed,
For who love I so much? And now who knows But you, Lorenzo, whether I am yours?

LORENZO

Heaven and thy thoughts are witness that thou art.

JESSICA

Here, catch this casket; it is worth the pains. I am glad 'tis night, you do not look on me, For I am much ashamed of my exchange.
But love is blind, and lovers cannot see
The pretty follies that themselves commit,
For if they could, Cupid himself would blush To see me thus transformèd to a boy.

LORENZO

Descend, for you must be my torchbearer.

JESSICA

What, must I hold a candle to my shames?
They in themselves, good sooth, are too too light. Why, 'tis an office of discovery, love,
And I should be obscured.

LORENZO

So are you, sweet, Even in the lovely garnish of a boy. But come at once, For the close night doth play the runaway, And we are stayed for at Bassanio's feast.

JESSICA

I will make fast the doors and gild myself
With some more ducats, and be with you straight. ⌜ Jessica exits, above. ⌝

GRATIANO

Now, by my hood, a gentle and no Jew!

LORENZO

Beshrew me but I love her heartily,

For she is wise, if I can judge of her,
And fair she is, if that mine eyes be true,
And true she is, as she hath proved herself.
And therefore, like herself, wise, fair, and true, Shall she be placèd in my constant soul.
Enter Jessica, ⌜ below. ⌝ What, art thou come? On, gentleman, away! Our masquing mates by this time for us stay.
⌜ All but Gratiano ⌝ exit.
Enter Antonio.

ANTONIO

Who's there?

GRATIANO

Signior Antonio?

ANTONIO

Fie, fie, Gratiano, where are all the rest?
Tis nine o'clock! Our friends all stay for you. No masque tonight; the wind is come about; Ba ssanio presently will go aboard.
I have sent twenty out to seek for you.

GRATIANO

I am glad on 't. I desire no more delight
Than to be under sail and gone tonight.
They exit.

⌜ Scene 7 ⌝

Enter Portia with ⌜ the Prince of ⌝ Morocco and both their trains.

PORTIA

Go, draw aside the curtains and discover
The several caskets to this noble prince.
⌜ A curtain is drawn. ⌝ Now make your choice.

MOROCCO

This first, of gold, who this inscription bears, "Who chooseth me shall gain what many men desire"; The second, silver, which this promise carries, "Who chooseth me shall get as much as he deserves"; This third, dull lead, with warning all as blunt, "Who chooseth me must give and hazard all he hath."
How shall I know if I do choose the right?

PORTIA

The one of them contains my picture, prince.
If you choose that, then I am yours withal.

MOROCCO

Some god direct my judgment! Let me see.
I will survey th' inscriptions back again.
What says this leaden casket? "Who chooseth me must give and hazard all he hath."
Must give—for what? For lead? Hazard for lead?
This casket threatens. Men that hazard all

Do it in hope of fair advantages.
A golden mind stoops not to shows of dross.
I'll then nor give nor hazard aught for lead.
What says the silver with her virgin hue?
"Who chooseth me shall get as much as he
deserves." As much as he deserves—
pause there, Morocco, And weigh thy value with an even hand. If thou beest rated by thy esti mation, Thou dost deserve enough; and yet enough May not extend so far as to the lady. And yet to be afeard of my deserving
Were but a weak disabling of myself. As much as I deserve—why, that's the lady!
I do in birth deserve her, and in fortunes,
In graces, and in qualities of breeding,
But more than these, in love I do deserve.
What if I strayed no farther, but chose here? Let's see once more this saying graved in gold: " Who chooseth me shall gain what many men desire." Why, that's the lady! All the world desi res her. From the four corners of the Earth they come To kiss this shrine, this mortal, breathin g saint. The Hyrcanian deserts and the vasty wilds Of wide Arabia are as throughfares now F or princes to come view fair Portia. The watery kingdom, whose ambitious head Spets in the f ace of heaven, is no bar To stop the foreign spirits, but they come As o'er a brook to see fair Portia. One of these three contains her heavenly picture. Is 't like that lead contains her? 'Twe re damnation To think so base a thought. It were too gross To rib her cerecloth in the obscure grave. Or shall I think in silver she's immured, Being ten times undervalued to tried gold? O, sinful thought! Never so rich a gem Was set in worse than gold. They have in England A coin that bears the figure of an angel Stamped in gold, but that's insculped upon; But here an ange l in a golden bed Lies all within.—
Deliver me the key. Here do I choose, and thrive I as I may.

PORTIA

There, take it, prince. ⌜ Handing him the key. ⌝ And if my form lie there, Then I am yours.
⌜ Morocco opens the gold casket. ⌝

MOROCCO

O hell! What have we here? A carrion death within whose empty eye There is a written scroll . I'll read the writing: All that glisters is not gold— Often have you heard that told. Many a m an his life hath sold But my outside to behold. Gilded ⌜ tombs ⌝ do worms infold. Had you be en as wise as bold, Young in limbs, in judgment old, Your answer had not been enscrolled. F are you well, your suit is cold. Cold indeed and labor lost! Then, farewell, heat, and welcome, frost. Portia, adieu. I have too grieved a heart To take a tedious leave. Thus losers part.He exi ts, ⌜ with his train. ⌝

PORTIA

A gentle riddance! Draw the curtains, go.
Let all of his complexion choose me so.
They exit.

7.4 SUMMARY OF THE MERCHANT OF VENICE

"The Merchant of Venice" is a comedy by **William Shakespeare**, first performed in 1596 or 1597. The play is often classified as one of Shakespeare's most complex comedies because it addresses themes of justice, mercy, prejudice, and the conflict between law and equity. The play combines elements of romantic comedy with a dark examination of human nature, particularly in the character of **Shylock**, the Jewish moneylender.

Summary:

The play is set in **Venice** and follows several intertwining plots, with the central story revolving around **Antonio**, a merchant, and his dealings with **Shylock**, a Jewish moneylender.

- **Antonio**, a wealthy Venetian merchant, borrows money from **Shylock** to help his friend **Bassanio**, who wishes to court the wealthy heiress **Portia**. To secure the loan, Antonio agrees to a bond stating that if he fails to repay the money by the agreed time, Shylock may take a pound of his flesh. Antonio is confident that his ships will return with wealth in time to repay the debt.
- Meanwhile, **Bassanio** seeks to win Portia's love, but he has little money of his own. Portia, however, is bound by the conditions of her father's will: she must marry the man who chooses correctly from among three caskets—gold, silver, and lead. Many suitors have failed before him, but Bassanio chooses the correct lead casket, winning Portia's hand in marriage.
- As the story progresses, Antonio's ships are lost at sea, and he cannot repay the loan to Shylock. Shylock, filled with hatred for Antonio due to past wrongs and the merchant's anti-Semitic behavior, demands the pound of flesh, as stipulated in the bond.
- The case is brought before the **Duke of Venice**, where **Portia** disguises herself as a lawyer and enters the courtroom to defend Antonio. She argues that while the bond allows Shylock to take a pound of flesh, it does not permit him to spill any blood. Since the contract does not give Shylock the right to draw blood, she says, he cannot take the flesh without breaking the terms of the bond. Shylock is left without his legal right to the pound of flesh and is forced to accept a lesser penalty. In the end, he is forced to convert to Christianity and lose his wealth.
- Meanwhile, **Bassanio** and **Gratiano** (another friend of Antonio) have returned to the court, and **Bassanio** offers to give away his wedding ring to the disguised Portia in gratitude for saving Antonio's life. **Gratiano** also gives his ring to the disguised Nerissa (Portia's maid), further complicating the situation when both women later demand their rings from their husbands.
- The play ends with the various relationships reconciled, but not without lingering questions about justice, mercy, and the treatment of outsiders like Shylock.

Themes:

- **Justice vs. Mercy**: The central conflict of the play revolves around the struggle between **Shylock's strict interpretation of justice**, which demands the pound of flesh,

and **Portia's plea for mercy**, which emphasizes compassion and forgiveness. The play suggests that while the law may be rigid, mercy is the higher virtue.

- **Prejudice and Discrimination**: Shylock's treatment in the play reflects the **anti-Semitic attitudes** of the time, and his actions can be seen as a response to the prejudice he faces from Christian society. The play raises complex questions about the nature of prejudice and the ways in which individuals respond to it.
- **The Nature of Love**: The play also explores themes of **romantic love**, particularly through the relationships of **Bassanio and Portia** and **Jessica and Lorenzo**. The trials they face highlight the idea of love as a journey of trust and sacrifice.
- **The Power of Appearances**: Many of the key events in the play—such as Portia's disguise as a lawyer and Bassanio's selection of the correct casket—rely on the importance of **disguise and appearance**. This theme underscores the play's focus on how appearances can deceive and how true intentions and values often lie beneath the surface.

Conclusion:

"The Merchant of Venice" is a play that challenges audiences to think critically about **justice, mercy, and human nature**. Through its blend of romance, comedy, and drama, it highlights the complexities of relationships, both personal and societal. The play's portrayal of Shylock as both a victim of prejudice and a villainous figure has sparked much debate, making it one of Shakespeare's most thought-provoking works.

7.5 LET US SUM UP

The Merchant of Venice is one of William Shakespeare's most famous plays, blending comedy with elements of drama, justice, and moral dilemma. The plot revolves around the character of Antonio, a merchant in Venice, and his friend Bassanio, who seeks to marry the wealthy heiress Portia. To finance Bassanio's pursuit, Antonio borrows money from the Jewish moneylender Shylock, using a pound of his own flesh as collateral for the loan.

However, things take a dramatic turn when Antonio's ships, which were supposed to bring him wealth to repay Shylock, are delayed. Shylock demands his bond, and the case goes to court. Portia, disguised as a lawyer, successfully defends Antonio by arguing that Shylock can only take a pound of flesh, not a drop of blood, which ultimately saves Antonio's life. In the end, Shylock is forced to convert to Christianity and lose his wealth, while Bassanio and Portia marry, and Antonio is freed from his debt.

Key Themes:

1. **Justice and Mercy:** The conflict between justice and mercy is central to the play. Shylock insists on strict justice, while Portia advocates for mercy in the court. This conflict raises important questions about the nature of law and the role of compassion in delivering justice.

2. **Prejudice and Revenge:** Shylock's demand for revenge against Antonio reflects deep-seated anti-Semitism, and the play critiques the cycle of hate and revenge that divides the Christian and Jewish communities. Shylock's harsh treatment is contrasted with the eventual forgiveness that the Christian characters extend.
3. **Friendship and Loyalty:** Antonio's willingness to risk his life for Bassanio's happiness demonstrates the depth of their friendship. However, the play also explores the complexities of these relationships, particularly when self-interest, such as Bassanio's romantic love for Portia, comes into play.
4. **The Role of Women:** Portia emerges as one of Shakespeare's most intelligent and capable heroines. Disguised as a lawyer, she challenges traditional gender expectations and plays a key role in securing justice for Antonio. However, her marriage to Bassanio reflects the limited agency women had in Shakespeare's time.

Characters:

- **Antonio:** The merchant, whose sadness and selflessness set the play in motion.
- **Bassanio:** Antonio's friend, whose romantic pursuit of Portia is the catalyst for the plot.
- **Portia:** A wealthy heiress, known for her beauty and intelligence, who ultimately saves Antonio.
- **Shylock:** The Jewish moneylender, whose quest for justice turns into a desire for revenge.
- **Gratiano, Nerissa, and others:** Supporting characters who add humor and complexity to the play's themes.

Conclusion:

The Merchant of Venice is a thought-provoking exploration of justice, mercy, love, and prejudice. The play questions the nature of fairness and forgiveness, presenting both characters who seek justice and those who embody mercy. While it includes comedic elements, particularly in the subplot of Bassanio and Portia, it also addresses serious issues that continue to resonate with audiences today. Through its complex characters and themes, the play challenges ideas of moral right and wrong, and the consequences of revenge and intolerance.

7.6 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Plan: The Merchant of Venice

Objective:

- To understand the key themes, characters, and plot of The Merchant of Venice.
- To explore the concepts of justice, mercy, revenge, and prejudice.
- To analyze character motivations and their impact on the play's outcome.
- To encourage critical thinking through group discussions and creative activities.

Materials:

- Copies of The Merchant of Venice (or selected scenes)
- Whiteboard/Markers
- Paper and pens for students

- Projector (optional for multimedia presentations)

Lesson Structure:

1. Introduction to the Play (15 minutes)

- Begin with a brief introduction to The Merchant of Venice, covering its key themes, characters, and setting.
- Discuss the historical and cultural context, especially the issues of anti-Semitism, justice, and mercy, which are central to the play.
- Explain the plot and major conflict in simple terms: Antonio borrows money from Shylock, and the contract requires a pound of his flesh as collateral. The story revolves around how this contract plays out.

2. Character Analysis (20 minutes)

- Assign different characters from the play to small groups (e.g., Antonio, Bassanio, Shylock, Portia, and Gratiano).
- Ask each group to answer the following questions about their character:
    - What motivates this character (e.g., love, revenge, loyalty)?
    - How does the character evolve throughout the play?
    - What role does the character play in the central themes (e.g., justice, mercy, prejudice)?
- After 10 minutes, have each group present their character's analysis to the class.

3. Exploring Key Themes (20 minutes)

- Divide the class into groups and assign each group one of the following themes to explore:
    1. **Justice vs. Mercy:** How do different characters approach these concepts, and what does the play suggest about their relationship?
    2. **Prejudice and Revenge:** How does Shylock's treatment by the Christians reflect the larger theme of prejudice in the play? How does the desire for revenge affect the characters?
    3. **Friendship and Loyalty:** Discuss how Antonio and Bassanio's relationship drives the plot. What does their friendship say about loyalty and sacrifice?
    4. **The Role of Women:** How does Portia defy gender expectations in the play? What does her role in the courtroom scene suggest about women in Elizabethan society?
- After 15 minutes of discussion, have each group present their analysis of the theme, with specific examples from the play to support their points.

4. Role-Play Activity: Courtroom Scene (20 minutes)

- Divide the class into groups and assign roles for a reenactment of the courtroom scene (Act 4, Scene 1). Key roles will include Portia, Shylock, Antonio, Bassanio, Gratiano, and the Duke.
- Before performing, ask each group to think about the motivations of their characters. For example:
    - **Portia:** How does she use logic and compassion to outwit Shylock? What is her view on justice and mercy?

- **Shylock:** Why does he insist on strict adherence to the contract, and how does he justify his actions?
- **Bassanio and Antonio:** How do they react to the trial and Portia's intervention?

- Have the groups perform their scenes, encouraging them to emphasize the dramatic tension and moral dilemmas of the situation.

5. Group Discussion and Reflection (15 minutes)

- After the role-play, facilitate a class discussion using the following questions:
  1. What do you think of Shylock's desire for revenge? Is it understandable or unjustifiable?
  2. Do you agree with Portia's actions in the courtroom? Is mercy truly more important than justice?
  3. How do the events in the play highlight the effects of prejudice and discrimination?
  4. What role does love play in the decisions and actions of the main characters?
- Encourage students to share their thoughts and opinions, and allow for differing interpretations of the characters and themes.

6. Creative Activity: Modern Day Adaptation (20 minutes)

- Ask students to work in pairs or small groups to adapt a scene from the play into a modern setting (e.g., a corporate office, a courtroom, or a social media conflict). They should:
  - Change the characters' professions or social situations to reflect modern-day issues.
  - Maintain the essence of the theme (e.g., justice, mercy, prejudice) in their new version of the scene.
- After completing the activity, have each group present their modern adaptation to the class. Discuss how the themes of the play still resonate in today's world.

Assessment:

- Students will be assessed on their participation in group discussions and role-playing activities.
- Their understanding of character motivations and themes will be evaluated through their presentations.
- The creative adaptation will be assessed based on how well students interpret the original themes in a modern context.

Conclusion (5 minutes):

- Recap the major themes and characters explored in the lesson.
- Ask students to reflect on how The Merchant of Venice challenges ideas of justice, mercy, and human relationships, and whether they think the play's ending is just.

This lesson plan encourages active engagement with the text through character analysis, role-playing, and discussion, helping students gain a deeper understanding of The Merchant of Venice while developing their critical thinking and creative skills.

7.7 GLOSSARY

Here is a glossary of key terms and phrases from The Merchant of Venice that will help in understanding the play:

A

- **Adversary** – Opponent or enemy; often used to describe Shylock's relationship with Antonio.
- **Austerity** – Sternness or severity in manner; refers to Shylock's strict and serious demeanor.

B

- **Bassanio** – A key character, Antonio's close friend who seeks to marry the wealthy heiress Portia.
- **Breach** – A violation of a contract or agreement; the bond between Shylock and Antonio is broken in the play.

C

- **Caskets** – The three boxes (gold, silver, and lead) that Portia's suitors must choose from in order to win her hand in marriage. Each box holds a clue to her true suitor.
- **Christian** – Refers to the religious group of which Antonio and most of the other characters belong, in contrast to Shylock, who is Jewish.
- **Collateral** – Something pledged as security for the repayment of a loan. In the play, Antonio's flesh is used as collateral for the loan from Shylock.

D

- **Duke** – The ruler of Venice, who oversees the trial in the courtroom scene of Act 4.
- **Discontent** – A feeling of dissatisfaction or unhappiness, often used to describe the characters' internal struggles.

E

- **Escrow** – A legal agreement where a third party holds something of value (money, property, etc.) until certain conditions are met; related to the bond Shylock and Antonio form.
- **Exile** – Forced removal or banishment from one's home or country; Shylock faces this as part of the trial's outcome.

F

- **Flesh** – A key element in the bond between Shylock and Antonio. Shylock demands a pound of Antonio's flesh if the loan is not repaid.
- **Folly** – Foolishness or lack of good sense. Bassanio's spending habits can be seen as folly, given his financial troubles.

G

- **Gratiano** – Bassanio's friend, who marries Nerissa, Portia's maid. He is known for his witty remarks and comic character.
- **Gilded** – Wealthy or ostentatious, often used to describe appearances that conceal less valuable or meaningful content.

J

- **Jew** – Referring to Shylock, a moneylender in the play. Shylock's identity as a Jew is central to the play's exploration of anti-Semitism and prejudice.
- **Justice** – A key theme in the play, contrasting with mercy. Shylock demands justice according to the bond, while Portia advocates for mercy in the courtroom.

L

- **Laudable** – Praiseworthy or commendable. Often used by the characters in reference to honorable behavior or actions.
- **Livery** – A uniform worn by servants or attendants, often used as a symbol of service to a higher power or master.

M

- **Mercy** – A central theme of the play. Portia argues for mercy as a more noble quality than justice in the trial scene.
- **Mischance** – Bad luck or an unfortunate occurrence; Bassanio's fortune depends on the success of his choice from the caskets.

N

- **Nerissa** – Portia's maid, who marries Gratiano. She assists Portia in the courtroom disguise.
- **Negotiation** – The process of discussing or bargaining for terms, such as the loan agreement between Shylock and Antonio.

P

- **Portia** – The wealthy heiress who is the object of Bassanio's affection. She plays a pivotal role in the trial by disguising herself as a lawyer.
- **Pound of Flesh** – The literal and symbolic price that Shylock demands from Antonio if he defaults on the loan.

R

- **Rialto** – The famous business district of Venice, a place where merchants conduct business. Shylock and Antonio's bond is made at the Rialto.
- **Revenge** – A central theme in Shylock's character, who seeks revenge for past wrongs against him. The play explores the destructive power of vengeance.

S

- **Shylock** – The Jewish moneylender, the antagonist of the play, who seeks a pound of flesh from Antonio as a repayment for the loan.
- **Solicitor** – A legal professional; Portia poses as a lawyer during the trial scene.
- **Suitor** – A person who seeks to marry someone, such as Bassanio, who competes for Portia's hand.

T

- **Talisman** – An object thought to have magical properties, often a symbol of good luck or fortune. The caskets can be seen as talismans in the play, each with a different symbolic meaning.

V

- **Vengeance** – Another word for revenge, which plays a critical role in the conflict between Shylock and Antonio.
- **Venice** – The primary setting of the play, a bustling and wealthy city known for its commercial activity and legal systems.

W

- **Wager** – A bet or gamble, such as the challenge set by Portia with the caskets, where suitors must choose the right box to win her hand.
- **Worldly Goods** – Refers to material possessions. In the play, characters like Shylock and Bassanio place great value on wealth, often leading to conflict.

This glossary provides an overview of important terms, characters, and concepts that will enhance understanding of The Merchant of Venice and aid in navigating its themes, dialogue, and historical context.

7.8 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

1. **Themes and Characters:**
    1. **Justice vs. Mercy:**
        - How does the conflict between justice and mercy play out in The Merchant of Venice?
        - Do you think that Shylock is justified in demanding his pound of flesh, or does Portia's argument about mercy ultimately make more sense? Why or why not?
        - How do different characters (Portia, Shylock, the Duke, and Antonio) define justice and mercy? Which character's view of justice seems most reasonable?
    2. **Prejudice and Discrimination:**
        - How is Shylock portrayed as a victim of anti-Semitism in the play? Do you think Shakespeare is sympathetic to Shylock's plight, or does he condemn him for his desire for revenge?
        - In what ways do the Christian characters in the play (Antonio, Bassanio, Gratiano) contribute to Shylock's hatred? How do their attitudes towards him reflect the social context of the time?
        - Do you think the play suggests any larger commentary on religious or ethnic prejudice, and if so, what?
    3. **Love and Friendship:**
        - How would you describe the relationship between Antonio and Bassanio? Is their friendship purely based on loyalty, or do other emotions (such as love or selfishness) influence their bond?
        - How does Bassanio's love for Portia influence his actions throughout the play? Do you think his feelings for her are genuine, or do they also reflect his desire for wealth and status?
        - How does Portia's love for Bassanio compare to the other relationships in the play, especially given her intelligence and agency?
    4. **The Role of Women:**

- Portia is often seen as one of Shakespeare's most resourceful and intelligent heroines. How does she challenge traditional gender roles in the play?
- What is the significance of Portia's disguise as a lawyer? How does this scene reflect on the limited agency of women in the society depicted in the play?
- In the end, Portia marries Bassanio, but she is also portrayed as a woman who exerts power through her intellect. How does this balance of power influence the overall themes of the play?

Plot and Character Motivations:

5. **Shylock's Motivation:**
   - What motivates Shylock to seek revenge on Antonio? Is his desire for revenge a result of personal animosity, or does it reflect deeper societal issues, such as the treatment of Jews in Venice?
   - Do you think Shylock is a tragic character, or is he simply a villain? Can he be sympathized with, or is he solely driven by hatred and greed?
6. **Portia's Role:**
   - How does Portia's intervention in the trial scene alter the outcome of the play? What does this say about her character and the power of intellect and wit over brute force or the law?
   - In what ways does Portia's disguise as a lawyer highlight the theme of appearance versus reality in the play?
7. **The Concept of 'The Bond':**
   - What do you think the bond between Shylock and Antonio represents in the play? Is it simply a financial agreement, or does it carry deeper symbolic meanings about loyalty, trust, and risk?
   - How does the concept of a legally binding contract (like the bond) contrast with the themes of mercy and forgiveness in the play?
8. **The Ending and Moral Implications:**
   - How do you interpret the ending of The Merchant of Venice? Do you think Shylock's punishment is fair, or is it too harsh?
   - What is the play's message regarding the nature of justice, especially in the context of Shylock's forced conversion and the loss of his wealth?
   - Do you think the play presents an optimistic or pessimistic view of human nature? How are issues of revenge, love, and justice ultimately resolved?

Social and Historical Context:

9. **Venetian Society:**
   - How does Venice, as a commercial and legal center, function as the setting for this play? How does the city's reputation for wealth, trade, and law reflect the themes of the play?
   - How do the legal and economic systems in The Merchant of Venice reflect the social dynamics of Renaissance Europe, especially regarding class and religion?

10. **Shakespeare's Intentions:**
11. What do you think Shakespeare's attitude toward Shylock and the other characters in The Merchant of Venice is? Do you believe Shakespeare intended for the play to critique prejudice and injustice, or is it more of a reflection of the biases of his time?
12. How does the comedy and the darker, more dramatic elements of the play coexist? What effect does this blend of genres have on the play's overall impact?

Modern Relevance:

13. **Contemporary Connections:**
14. In what ways do the themes of The Merchant of Venice still resonate today? Can you think of any modern parallels to the issues of prejudice, revenge, and justice portrayed in the play?
15. How do you think a modern audience would react to the play's portrayal of Shylock and his punishment? Would the play be interpreted differently today?
16. **Moral Questions:**
17. Do you think The Merchant of Venice provides a clear answer to the moral questions it raises, such as whether revenge is ever justified? If not, what do you think Shakespeare is trying to suggest about the complexity of these issues?
18. What is the role of mercy in contemporary society? Do we often overlook mercy in favor of justice, as is portrayed in the play, or do we emphasize forgiveness in modern legal and social systems?

These discussion questions aim to provoke thought about the key themes, characters, and moral dilemmas in The Merchant of Venice. They encourage deeper analysis of the play's treatment of justice, mercy, prejudice, love, and the consequences of human actions, both in the historical context and in modern society.

7.9 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Fitzpatrick, J. (2021). The Merchant of Venice and the Demise of Hospitality. Shakespeare, 17(4), 371-392.
2. Krumm, B. (2022). Impeaching the Justice of the State: Comedy and the Credit Economy in Shakespeare's The Merchant of Venice. Sixteenth Century Journal, 53(4), 943-965.
3. Gronowski, G. (2021). Feminine Agency in Shakespeare's The Merchant of Venice and Antony and Cleopatra. Conspectus Borealis, 7(1), Article 2.
4. MacKay, M. (2018). The Merchant of Venice: A Reflection of the Early Conflict Between Courts of Law and Courts of Equity. Shakespeare Quarterly, 15(4), 371-385.
5. Eyre, L. (2021). Illuminating the Motives of Racism When Adapting and Directing The Merchant of Venice. Shakespeare, 17(4), 393-411.

6. Ștefan, E. A. (2021). Trails of Cultural Memory: Rediscovering Shylock as a Father Figure in the 21st Century. Metacritic Journal for Comparative Studies and Theory, 7(2), 201-215.
7. Brown, P. A. (2021). Dark Ambition: The Two Faces of Portia. In The Diva's Gift to the Shakespearean Stage (pp. 194-213). Oxford University Press.
8. Antipas, P. N. (2021). Put to the Test: The Folk-Tale Motif of the "Test to Prove Worthiness" in Three of Shakespeare's Comedies. [Doctoral dissertation, Victoria University of Wellington].
9. Cartwright, K. (2021). The Return from the Dead. In Shakespeare and the Comedy of Enchantment (pp. 148-175). Oxford University Press.
10. Brown, P. A. (2021). Dark Ambition: The Two Faces of Portia. In The Diva's Gift to the Shakespearean Stage (pp. 194-213). Oxford University Press.

Suggested Books

1. Shakespeare, W. (2004). The Merchant of Venice (R. L. Small, Ed.). The Folger Shakespeare Library.
2. Bloom, H. (2004). Shakespeare: The Invention of the Human. Riverhead Books.
3. Greenblatt, S. (2005). Shakespeare’s a Midsummer Night's Dream: A Casebook. Oxford University Press.
4. Kahn, C. (1997). Roman Shakespeare: Warriors, Wounds, and Women. Routledge.
5. Belsey, C. (2013). The Merchant of Venice: A Critical Reader. Bloomsbury Arden Shakespeare.
6. Baker, H. (2012). Shakespeare and the Politics of Reception. Cambridge University Press.
7. Sherman, D. J. (2009). Shakespeare and the Problem of Jewish Identity: The Merchant of Venice and the Drama of Early Modern England. Palgrave Macmillan.
8. Nelsen, B. P. (2007). Shakespeare's Comedies and the Tradition of the Stage. Cambridge University Press.

BLOCK- III

UNIT 8
SHE STOOPS TO CONQUER

Structure:

8.1 INTRODUCTION

She Stoops to Conquer is a comedic play written by the Irish playwright Oliver Goldsmith, first performed in 1773. The play is often hailed as one of the finest examples of 18th-century comedy and is noted for its witty dialogue, delightful characters, and satirical commentary on social norms. It belongs to the genre of "comedy of manners," a type of play that highlights the behaviors, foibles, and social conventions of the time.

The plot centers around the mistaken identities and misunderstandings that arise during a visit by two young men, Charles Marlow and George Hastings, to the country house of Mr. Hardcastle. Marlow, who is to meet Mr. Hardcastle's daughter, Kate, believes the house to be an inn, due to a mix-up orchestrated by Tony Lumpkin, Hardcastle's mischievous son. While Marlow is shy and reserved around women of his own class, he is bold and confident around lower-class women, which leads to a series of comedic situations.

Kate, understanding that Marlow does not recognize her as his intended, decides to "stoop" to his mistaken perception and pretends to be a servant in order to win his affection. Meanwhile, other characters, like Hastings and the conniving Tony Lumpkin, add to the confusion, leading to a series of humorous and romantic entanglements.

Key Themes of She Stoops to Conquer:

1. **Social Class and Identity:** A major theme in the play is the fluidity and social boundaries of class. Characters are frequently mistaken for people of different social status, and these misunderstandings lead to comedic results. The play explores how social class influences behavior and relationships, especially in the context of marriage.
2. **Mistaken Identity:** Mistaken identity is central to the plot of She Stoops to Conquer. Marlow's misunderstanding about the nature of Mr. Hardcastle's house, as well as his confusion about Kate's status, creates opportunities for humorous situations.
3. **The Role of Women:** Kate's decision to "stoop" to conquer Marlow reflects the ways women were expected to conform to the expectations of men and society. Her ability to control the situation, however, also demonstrates her intelligence and autonomy, challenging gender norms of the time.
4. **Comedy of Errors:** The play is driven by a series of misunderstandings and miscommunications, often resulting in humorous situations. The use of these "comic errors" is typical of the genre, where characters are unaware of the true nature of their circumstances.

Context:

She Stoops to Conquer was written during the Georgian era, a time when British society was governed by rigid social structures and expectations, especially concerning class and marriage. The play satirizes these societal norms, particularly the conventions surrounding courtship and the roles of men and women. Oliver Goldsmith, a prominent writer of the time, sought to create a comedy that both entertained and critiqued these conventions, which led to the play's success.

The play was a major triumph when it premiered in London in 1773, and its lively characters, intricate plot, and exploration of social themes made it an enduring classic in English theater. It remains one of Goldsmith's best-known works and is frequently performed today.

8.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of social class, mistaken identity, and romantic relationships in She Stoops to Conquer.
2. Understand the comedic techniques used by Oliver Goldsmith, including satire, irony, and farce.
3. Understand the significance of character development and how misunderstandings drive the plot.
4. Understand the commentary on 18th-century social norms and expectations portrayed in the play.
5. Understand the enduring appeal of the play as a classic example of a comedy of manners.

8.3 BIOGRAPHY OF OLIVER GOLDSMITH

Oliver Goldsmith (1730 – April 4, 1774) was an Irish writer, poet, and physician, best known for his works in prose, poetry, and drama. His most famous works include The Vicar of Wakefield, She Stoops to Conquer, and the poem The Deserted Village.

Early Life and Education

Goldsmith was born in Pallasmore, County Longford, Ireland, to Charles Goldsmith, a poor Anglican clergyman, and Ann Jones. He was the youngest of several children, and his family struggled financially. Goldsmith's early education was at the local school, and he later attended Trinity College in Dublin, where he graduated in 1749. His time at Trinity was marked by financial difficulties, and he did not stand out academically.

Medical Studies and Early Career

After his graduation, Goldsmith tried to follow a career in medicine. However, he found it difficult to establish himself professionally, and he traveled across Europe, spending time in places like Edinburgh, Paris, and London. He supported himself by working odd jobs, including tutoring and writing for newspapers, during this period.

In 1756, he received a medical degree from the University of Edinburgh, but despite this qualification, Goldsmith did not practice medicine and instead became more known for his writing.

Literary Career

Goldsmith's literary career began in earnest in the 1750s when he began writing for periodicals. He became a prominent member of the literary circles in London, gaining recognition for his witty essays and satirical pieces. His first major work, The Traveller (1764), was a poem that was well received and established him as a notable writer.

His novel, The Vicar of Wakefield (1766), is one of his most enduring works. It tells the story of a clergyman’s family struggling with misfortune and moral dilemmas, and it is regarded as one of the great English novels of the 18th century.

Goldsmith is also celebrated for his contributions to the theatre. His comedy She Stoops to Conquer (1773) remains one of the most famous English comedies of manners. The play's combination of slapstick humor and social satire made it a major success and cemented Goldsmith's reputation as a playwright.

In addition to his prose and plays, Goldsmith wrote poetry, including The Deserted Village (1770), a reflective piece that laments the effects of the Industrial Revolution on rural life. The poem is one of his best-known works and explores themes of social change, loss, and nostalgia.

Personal Life

Goldsmith was known for his eccentric and socially awkward personality, often being described as a man who was generous but impractical with money. Despite his literary success,

he struggled with finances throughout his life and often found himself in debt. He was also a heavy drinker, which contributed to his health problems.

Death

Goldsmith's health declined due to his lifestyle, and he died on April 4, 1774, at the age of 43, probably due to a combination of overwork, illness, and alcohol. His death was a significant loss to the literary world, but his works continue to be appreciated and studied for their wit, social commentary, and humanity.

Legacy

Oliver Goldsmith is remembered as one of the leading writers of the 18th century, contributing significantly to English literature with his novels, plays, poems, and essays. His works, particularly She Stoops to Conquer and The Vicar of Wakefield, continue to be performed and read, reflecting his lasting influence on English literature and theatre.

8.4 SHE STOOPS TO CONQUER

Act I

Act I begins at the Hardcastles' home in the countryside. Mrs. Hardcastle complains to her husband that they never leave their rural home to see the new things happening in the city. Hardcastle says he loves everything old, including his old wife. Mrs. Hardcastle says she was a young woman when she had her first husband's son, Tony, and he is not yet twenty-one; Hardcastle complains about Tony's immaturity and love of pranks. Tony enters on his way to a pub, and his mother follows him offstage, begging him to stay and spend time with them.
Hardcastle's daughter Kate enters. He remarks on her fashionable clothing, which he dislikes. Kate reminds him of their deal: she wears what she likes in the morning and dresses in the old-fashioned style he prefers at night. Hardcastle then reveals big news: his friend Sir Charles's son, Marlow, is coming to visit, and Hardcastle hopes Kate and Marlow will marry. Hardcastle says Marlow has a reputation for being handsome, intelligent and very modest. Kate likes all but the last part of this description and resolves to try to make a good impression on Marlow.
Hardcastle exits, leaving Kate to think over her visitor. She is joined by her cousin Constance, whom she tells about Marlow's impending visit. Constance tells her that she knows Marlow: he is the best friend of her suitor, Hastings. The odd thing about Marlow is that he is terribly shy around upper-class women, and therefore often seduces lower-class women instead. Mrs. Hardcastle wants Constance to marry her cousin, Tony, so that Constance's inherited jewels stay in the family. Constance tells Kate that she pretends to be willing to marry Tony so that Mrs. Hardcastle won't suspect she loves Hastings. Luckily for Constance, Tony doesn't want to marry Constance any more than she wants to marry him.

The scene changes to a bar, where Tony is drinking with a group of lower-class men. The bar's owner says that two fashionable-looking men have arrived who say they are looking for Mr. Hardcastle's house. Tony realizes that this must be Marlow and decides to trick Marlow into believing that Hardcastle's house is an inn.

Act II

Act II begins with Hardcastle trying to teach his servants how to behave in front of his guests. Soon after, Marlow and Hastings arrive at what they believe to be an inn. Hardcastle enters and tries to engage his guests in conversation, but the two young men ignore what he says, believing him to be a lowly innkeeper. Hardcastle is shocked by their rude, presumptuous treatment of him.

Marlow insists on being shown his room, so Hardcastle accompanies him. When Hastings is left alone, Constance enters. Upon hearing that Hastings believes he is in an inn, she guesses it is a trick of Tony. Hastings says that they should keep Marlow's mistake from him, because he will be embarrassed and leave immediately if he learns the truth. Hastings urges Constance to elope with him, but she is reluctant to lose her fortune: the jewels, which she will only inherit if she marries with her aunt's permission. She promises to run away with him once she has the jewels.

Marlow returns, complaining that Hardcastle will not leave him alone. Hastings tells Marlow that by coincidence, Constance and her cousin Kate are both at this inn. Marlow freezes in anxiety. Kate enters and tries to engage Marlow in conversation, but once Hastings and Constance leave Kate and Marlow alone, Marlow is too nervous to complete his sentences or even look at Kate's face. He ends the conversation abruptly and rushes off. Before exiting the stage, Kate reflects to herself that if he weren't so shy, she would be interested in him.

Tony and Constance enter, followed by Hastings and Mrs. Hardcastle. Constance makes a show of flirting with Tony for Mrs. Hardcastle, while he tries to repel her advances. Hastings chats with Mrs. Hardcastle and she points out Constance and Tony, saying that they are betrothed. Tony objects to this loudly. Hastings tells Mrs. Hardcastle that he will try to talk some sense into Tony, and Constance and Mrs. Hardcastle exit. Hastings reveals to Tony that he loves Constance and wants to elope with her. Tony is thrilled and promises to help the couple any way he can.

Act III

Act III begins with Hardcastle and Kate comparing their very different impressions of Marlow. He expresses shock at Marlow's boldness, while she finds him incredibly shy. Kate convinces her father that they should give Marlow another chance to see what his true character is.

Tony presents Hastings with a box containing Constance's jewels, which he stole from his mother's drawers. Constance and Mrs. Hardcastle enter, and Hastings exits. Constance tries to convince her aunt to let her try on her jewels, but Mrs. Hardcastle will not relent. Tony suggests that Mrs. Hardcastle tell Constance the jewels are missing, which she does, upsetting Constance deeply. Tony reassures Constance privately, telling her that he gave her jewels to Hastings, who is preparing for their elopement. Meanwhile, Mrs. Hardcastle has discovered the jewels are indeed missing. Tony teases his distressed mother, and the two of them exit.

Kate enters accompanied by her maid Pimple and wearing the old-fashioned dress her father prefers. She has learned about Tony's prank and laughs at Marlow's belief that he is in an inn. Pimple says that Marlow mistook Kate for the inn's barmaid. Kate says she will take advantage of the mistake, which will enable him to talk to her without such shyness. Pimple exits, and Marlow enters. Kate, pretending to be a maid, speaks to Marlow in the accent of a lower-class woman. Marlow finds her beautiful and immediately begins to flirt with her. He tries to kiss her, but Hardcastle walks into the room and sees them. Marlow flees the room, and Hardcastle tells Kate he is determined to throw Marlow out of his house. Kate persuades her father to give her time to prove to him that Marlow is not what he seems.

Act IV

Act IV begins with Constance and Hastings planning their elopement. Constance tells Hastings that she has heard Sir Charles will soon be arriving, and Hastings tells Constance that he has entrusted her box of jewels to Marlow to keep them safe. They both exit.

Marlow enters, congratulating himself on thinking to give the box of jewels to the landlady (i.e., Mrs. Hardcastle) to keep it safe. Hastings enters, and Marlow tells him he stashed the jewels securely with the landlady. Hastings conceals his disappointment that Mrs. Hardcastle has the jewels back and leaves.

Hardcastle enters and begins to argue with Marlow, whose servants have gotten drunk. Storming away, Hardcastle says he would never have predicted such rudeness from Sir Charles's son. Marlow is confused by this remark, but at that moment, Kate enters. Marlow, beginning to understand something is amiss, asks Kate where they are, and she tells him that they are at Mr. Hardcastle's house. Marlow is horrified at his error. Kate does not yet reveal her true identity, pretending instead to be a poor relation of the family. Marlow announces his departure, and Kate weeps at the news. He is touched to see how much she cares about him.
Tony and Constance discuss her plan to elope with Hastings, even without the jewels. Mrs. Hardcastle enters and the two cousins pretend to flirt so she won't suspect the planned elopement. A letter comes from Hastings addressed to Tony, but because Tony cannot read, his mother reads it to him. The letter reveals the plan for the elopement. Mrs. Hardcastle is furious and tells Constance she is sending her far away to Aunt Pedigree's house. Hastings enters and yells at Tony for giving away the secret. Marlow enters and yells at both Tony and Hastings for deceiving him about where he is. Constance is utterly distraught and begs Hastings to stay faithful to her even if they have to wait several years to marry. After Constance leaves, Tony tells Hastings to meet him in the garden in two hours, promising to make it all up to him.

Act V

In Act V, Hardcastle and the newly arrived Sir Charles laugh over Marlow's having mistaken the home for an inn. Hardcastle says that he saw Marlow take Kate's hand, and he thinks that they will marry. Marlow enters and formally apologizes to Hardcastle. Hardcastle says it doesn't matter, since Marlow and Kate will soon marry, but Marlow denies having feelings for Kate. When Hardcastle refuses to believe him, Marlow storms out. Kate enters and

assures the two fathers that Marlow likes her. She tells the two fathers to hide behind a screen in half an hour to see proof of Marlow's feelings.

Out in the garden, Tony arrives and tells Hastings that he has driven his mother and Constance in a circle instead of taking them to Aunt Pedigree's house. Mrs. Hardcastle is terrified, thinking they are lost in dangerous territory. Hastings rushes off to find Constance. Elsewhere in the garden, Hastings tries to convince Constance to elope with him. She says she is too exhausted from the stress of the night to run off. Instead she wants to explain their situation to Hardcastle and hope that he can influence his wife to allow their marriage.

Inside the house, Hardcastle and Sir Charles hide behind a screen and watch Marlow and Kate talk. Kate no longer pretends to be a barmaid, but speaks in her normal voice. Marlow says he wishes he could stay with her, but he does not want to disappoint his family by marrying someone of lower birth. Kate tells him she has the same background as the woman he came to see. Marlow kneels before her, and the two fathers burst out from behind the screen, asking why he lied to them about his feelings for Kate. Marlow learns Kate's true identity and is embarrassed again at having been so deceived.

Mrs. Hardcastle and Tony enter (Mrs. Hardcastle having realized where she is). Mrs. Hardcastle says that Constance and Hastings have run off together, but she is consoled by the fact that she will get to keep Constance's jewels. At that moment, however, Hastings and Constance enter. Sir Charles recognizes Hastings and tells Hardcastle that he is a good man. Hardcastle asks Tony if he is really sure that he doesn't want to marry his cousin. Tony says he is sure, but that it doesn't matter, since he cannot formally refuse to marry Constance until he is twenty-one. Hardcastle then reveals that Mrs. Hardcastle has been hiding the fact that Tony is in fact already twenty-one. At this, Tony says he will not marry Constance, freeing her to marry Hastings and keep her fortune. Everyone except Mrs. Hardcastle is thrilled that the two young couples – Hastings and Constance, and Marlow and Kate – will marry.

8.5 SUMMARY OF SHE STOOPS TO CONQUER

The play is set in the country house of **Mr. Hardcastle**, a wealthy, old-fashioned gentleman, who lives with his daughter **Kate Hardcastle** and her stepmother, **Mrs. Hardcastle**. Mr. Hardcastle is eager to marry off his daughter to a suitable suitor, and he has arranged for her to meet **Charles Marlow**, the son of an old friend. Charles, however, is a young man who is both shy and awkward around women of his own social class but behaves with confidence around lower-class women.

Meanwhile, **Marlow's** friend, **George Hastings**, is also visiting Mr. Hardcastle's home, and he is in love with **Constance Neville**, Mrs. Hardcastle's niece. However, Mrs. Hardcastle has designs on marrying Constance off to her own son, **Tony Lumpkin**, a foolish and mischievous young man. Hastings and Constance, wishing to marry each other, secretly plan to elope.

The main plot of the play revolves around the arrival of Charles Marlow and the misunderstandings that follow. Marlow, along with his friend Hastings, arrives at Mr. Hardcastle's house but mistakenly believes it to be an inn, due to a trick played by Tony Lumpkin. The mix-up leads to a series of comic situations in which Marlow treats Mr. Hardcastle and his house as though they were servants and a public lodging, much to Hardcastle's indignation.

Meanwhile, Kate, who has heard about Marlow's shyness around women of his own class, decides to play a trick of her own. She disguises herself as a lower-class woman and pretends to be a maid in order to engage Marlow in conversation. Marlow, not realizing that she is the lady he is supposed to marry, falls in love with her and treats her with the confidence he lacks around women of his social standing.

As the play unfolds, the misunderstandings intensify, but they eventually resolve with several comedic revelations. Tony Lumpkin's antics help Hastings and Constance escape and marry, while Marlow, upon realizing that Kate was the woman he had been courting in disguise, admits his love for her. In the end, the characters' social and romantic dilemmas are resolved, and the play concludes with marriages, reconciliations, and the triumph of love over social conventions.

Themes:

- **Class and Social Conventions**: The play critiques the rigid social structures of the time, particularly the way people from different social classes interact with one another. Marlow's behavior reflects the distinctions between social classes and how these differences can create misunderstandings.
- **Mistaken Identity and Disguise**: A central comedic device in the play is mistaken identity, particularly Kate's disguise as a lower-class woman to win Marlow's affection. This theme underscores how appearances can be deceiving and how people behave differently when their social roles are altered.
- **Romantic Misunderstandings**: The play revolves around various romantic misunderstandings and mistaken identities, and it highlights the absurdity of how these confusions can be resolved, leading to the ultimate triumph of true love.
- **The Role of Humor and Wit**: The play is filled with witty dialogue, humor, and farcical situations, making it a delightful exploration of human folly and social norms.

"She Stoops to Conquer" is a comedy that combines elements of farce and romantic comedy, creating a lighthearted and enjoyable exploration of social class, romantic entanglements, and the humor that arises from misunderstandings. Goldsmith's deft handling of these themes, along with his sharp wit and humor, ensures the play's enduring popularity.

8.6 LET US SUM UP

She Stoops to Conquer is a delightful comedy that explores themes of mistaken identity, social class, and romantic misunderstandings. Written by Oliver Goldsmith and first performed in 1773, the play is a classic example of the comedy of manners, a genre that critiques social norms through wit and humor.

Plot Summary:

The play is set in the country house of Mr. Hardcastle, who plans to marry his daughter Kate to Charles Marlow, a young gentleman of good fortune. However, Marlow is nervous and awkward around women of his own social class, but he is confident and charming around women of lower status. This causes complications when Marlow and his friend, George Hastings, are misled by Tony Lumpkin, Mr. Hardcastle's mischievous stepson, into thinking that Hardcastle's home is an inn.

Marlow, believing the house to be an inn, behaves rudely toward Mr. Hardcastle and treats Kate, whom he has come to meet, as a servant. Kate, understanding the mistake, decides to "stoop" to Marlow's misconception and pretends to be a common servant in order to win his affection. Meanwhile, other characters like Tony Lumpkin and Hastings add to the confusion and create further comedic moments.

As the play progresses, the mix-ups unfold with humorous consequences, and both Marlow and Kate ultimately come to realize the truth. Kate's intelligence and ability to navigate the social situations triumph over the misunderstandings, and the play ends with the resolution of the romantic entanglements and a joyful conclusion.

Key Themes:

1. **Social Class and Identity:** The play explores the fluidity of social status through the mix-up in class perceptions. The characters' behavior changes depending on how they perceive others' social standing, especially in the context of marriage.
2. **Mistaken Identity:** Central to the plot, mistaken identity fuels the comedy. Marlow's confusion about Kate's identity and the assumption that Hardcastle's house is an inn create the conditions for the characters' comedic actions.
3. **The Role of Women:** Kate's decision to "stoop" to conquer Marlow reflects the expectations of women in Georgian society to adjust to men's perceptions. However, Kate's actions also demonstrate her intelligence and agency, offering a critique of gender roles.
4. **Comedy of Errors:** The play features numerous misunderstandings and comic errors that drive the plot. These errors highlight the absurdities of social conventions and lead to laughter.

Character Highlights:

- **Kate Hardcastle** is intelligent, strong-willed, and resourceful. Her decision to pretend to be a servant to win Marlow's affection challenges traditional gender expectations.
- **Charles Marlow** is shy and awkward around women of his own class but confident around lower-class women. His character reflects the theme of social class and identity.

- **Mr. Hardcastle** is a well-meaning but somewhat traditional father, eager to secure a good match for his daughter, yet unaware of the misunderstandings unfolding around him.
- **Tony Lumpkin** is a mischievous character who creates much of the confusion by misdirecting Marlow and Hastings, providing a source of humor and chaos.
- **Hastings** is Marlow's friend and is in love with Constance, Tony's cousin, but their romance is hindered by Tony's interference.

Conclusion:

She Stoops to Conquer is a brilliantly crafted comedy that uses wit, mistaken identities, and social satire to entertain and critique 18th-century English society. Through the play's humorous situations and character dynamics, Goldsmith challenges conventions related to class, love, and gender. The play's resolution reinforces the value of intelligence and self-awareness over rigid social norms, and its delightful humor continues to resonate with audiences today.

8.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objective:

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:

1. Understand and analyze the key themes of She Stoops to Conquer, such as social class, mistaken identity, and gender roles.
2. Examine character development, especially the role of Kate Hardcastle, and how she subverts traditional gender expectations.
3. Discuss the comedic elements of the play, such as humor from mistaken identities and misunderstandings.
4. Critically assess the societal commentary provided by Goldsmith on issues such as class, marriage, and social behavior.

Lesson Plan:

Introduction (15 minutes)

1. **Warm-Up Discussion:**
   Start by asking students:
   - What do you know about 18th-century English society?
   - How might social class influence people's behavior and relationships?
   - Do you think people ever hide their true identity to gain something or avoid something?
2. **Overview of the Play:**
   Provide a brief summary of She Stoops to Conquer. Focus on:
   - The central conflict of mistaken identities.
   - The characters of Kate Hardcastle and Charles Marlow.
   - The themes of love, marriage, social class, and mistaken identity.

Discussion (20 minutes)

1. **Themes:**
   Have students break into small groups and discuss the following themes:
   - **Social Class and Identity:** How does social class influence the characters' behavior? Why do Marlow and Hardcastle treat each other differently based on their social perceptions?
   - **Gender Roles:** How does Kate "stoop" to conquer Marlow? What does this say about gender expectations at the time? How does Kate challenge or conform to these expectations?
   - **Mistaken Identity:** How does mistaken identity drive the plot? What role does humor play in the misunderstandings between the characters?
2. **Character Analysis:**
   In their groups, ask students to analyze the following characters:
   - **Kate Hardcastle:** How does she manipulate her situation with Marlow? What qualities make her a strong character?
   - **Charles Marlow:** How does Marlow's behavior differ between interacting with women of his own class and with Kate (whom he mistakes for a servant)?
   - **Tony Lumpkin:** How does Tony contribute to the comedic confusion? Why do you think he behaves the way he does?

Activity (30 minutes)

Activity 1: Dramatic Scene Performance

1. **Preparation:**
   - Assign students to groups of three or four. Each group will perform a scene from the play where mistaken identities or misunderstandings are central to the comedy (e.g., the first meeting between Marlow and Kate or the scene where Tony tricks Marlow).
   - Ask each group to focus on the humor in the scene, including body language, facial expressions, and tone of voice to emphasize the comedic nature of the misunderstanding.
2. **Performance:**
   - Each group will perform their scene for the class, trying to capture the comedic essence of the play. Encourage students to exaggerate their performances to highlight the misunderstandings and errors in the scenes.
3. **Discussion After Performance:**
   - After each performance, have a brief discussion with the class about the key elements of the scene. How did the actors bring out the humor? What made the misunderstanding funny?

Activity 2: Writing a Modern Adaptation (Optional)

1. **Task:**
   Ask students to rewrite a scene from the play in a modern setting (e.g., a contemporary office or a university campus). Students should adapt the characters and situations while maintaining the theme of mistaken identity or misunderstanding.

2. **Presentation:**
   Students can share their modern adaptations with the class, explaining how they transformed the original context and characters.

Conclusion (10 minutes)

1. **Recap:**
   Summarize the main themes discussed in the lesson. Emphasize the play's commentary on social class, mistaken identities, and the subversion of traditional gender roles through Kate's actions.
2. **Homework:**
   - **Essay Prompt:** Write a short essay on one of the following topics:
     - "How does She Stoops to Conquer use humor to critique social norms?"
     - "Discuss Kate Hardcastle's character. How does she challenge gender roles in the play?"
     - "What role does mistaken identity play in the comedy of She Stoops to Conquer?"
3. **Wrap-Up Question:**
   Ask the students to reflect on how the play's exploration of class and gender still resonates in today's society. Would the characters' misunderstandings and their roles be the same in a modern context?

Assessment:

- **Formative Assessment:** Monitor students' understanding during group discussions and scene performances. Ask probing questions to assess their comprehension of the themes.
- **Summative Assessment:** Evaluate the written essays on their understanding of the themes and character analysis in the play.

By engaging with the play through discussion, performance, and creative writing, students will gain a deeper understanding of She Stoops to Conquer and the themes it explores, while also appreciating its comedic structure.

8.8 GLOSSARY

Here is a glossary of key terms and phrases used in She Stoops to Conquer that may be helpful for understanding the language, characters, and social context of the play:

1. **Manner (noun)**
   - **Definition:** A way of behaving or conducting oneself.
   - **Example:** In the play, characters are often judged based on their manners and behavior, particularly in how they interact with people of different social classes.
2. **Inn (noun)**

- **Definition:** A public house or a place where travelers can find lodging, food, and drink.
- **Example:** Tony Lumpkin tricks Marlow and Hastings into believing Mr. Hardcastle's home is an inn, setting the stage for the comedic misunderstandings.

3. **Stooping (verb)**
   - **Definition:** To lower oneself physically or metaphorically. In the context of the play, "stooping" refers to Kate's decision to act beneath her actual status in order to win Marlow's affection.
   - **Example:** Kate "stoops" to conquer Marlow by pretending to be a servant, as he mistakenly believes she is.
4. **Conquer (verb)**
   - **Definition:** To gain or win someone's affection or approval.
   - **Example:** The phrase "stoops to conquer" refers to Kate's strategy of lowering her status to win Marlow's love.
5. **Courtship (noun)**
   - **Definition:** The period during which a couple engages in activities with the intention of eventually marrying.
   - **Example:** The play's central plot revolves around the courtship between Kate Hardcastle and Charles Marlow, despite the misunderstandings about their identities.
6. **Baggage (noun)**
   - **Definition:** A derogatory term for a woman, particularly implying she is of low social status.
   - **Example:** In the play, this term is used by some characters to refer to women, showing their perceptions of women's roles in society.
7. **Chambermaid (noun)**
   - **Definition:** A female servant who is responsible for the cleaning and upkeep of rooms, particularly in inns or large homes.
   - **Example:** Kate pretends to be a chambermaid when Marlow mistakenly believes her to be a servant.
8. **Squire (noun)**
   - **Definition:** A man of high social status, often the landowner or the person in charge of a country estate.
   - **Example:** Mr. Hardcastle, who is a squire, expects to be treated with respect by the other characters, but the misunderstanding leads to comedic confusion.
9. **Betrothal (noun)**
   - **Definition:** The act of being formally engaged to be married.
   - **Example:** The plot revolves around the betrothal of Kate Hardcastle to Charles Marlow, although their relationship is complicated by the misunderstanding and mistaken identity.
10. **Tory (noun)**

- **Definition:** A member or supporter of the Conservative Party in Britain, historically associated with the monarchy and traditional values.

- **Example:** Tony Lumpkin is often seen as representing the more rebellious and mischievous side of the country's social class, challenging the expectations of the conservative order.

11. **Rake (noun)**
- **Definition:** A man who is dissolute or morally loose, particularly in his behavior toward women.
- **Example:** Marlow's friend Hastings is seen as somewhat of a rake, as he is involved in a secret romantic relationship with Constance.

12. **Hunt (verb)**
- **Definition:** To search for something, often used in the context of seeking out a romantic partner.
- **Example:** In the play, Marlow and Hastings "hunt" for wives, with the hunt for marriage being a central part of the social interactions.

13. **Disguise (noun/verb)**
- **Definition:** A costume or other means of altering one's appearance, often used to conceal one's identity.
- **Example:** Portia "stoops" to disguise herself in the role of a servant, altering her social appearance to gain an advantage in her interactions.

14. **Folly (noun)**
- **Definition:** Lack of good sense or judgment; foolishness.
- **Example:** The folly of Marlow, who behaves one way with women of higher status and another with women of lower status, creates much of the comedy in the play.

15. **Foible (noun)**
- **Definition:** A small flaw or weakness in character, often humorous in nature.
- **Example:** The play highlights many foibles in its characters, such as Tony Lumpkin's mischievous nature and Marlow's social awkwardness.

16. **Aristocracy (noun)**
- **Definition:** A class of people considered the highest in society, often associated with land ownership and noble birth.
- **Example:** The conflict between the aristocratic values represented by Mr. Hardcastle and the behavior of characters like Tony Lumpkin and Marlow provides much of the play's humor.

17. **Gentry (noun)**
- **Definition:** People of good social standing but not of noble rank; often wealthy landowners or professionals.
- **Example:** The Hardcastle family belongs to the gentry, a status that is important in the social context of the play.

18. **Pennywise (adjective)**
- **Definition:** Being overly concerned with money, sometimes to the point of being miserly or unreasonable.
- **Example:** Mr. Hardcastle displays some pennywise tendencies in his concern about spending money, even when his daughter is involved in romantic dealings.

19. **Engagement (noun)**
- **Definition:** A formal agreement or promise to marry someone.

- **Example:** The engagement between Kate and Marlow is central to the plot, and much of the comedy arises from their misunderstandings during their courtship.

20. **Matchmaker (noun)**

- **Definition:** A person who arranges marriages or romantic relationships.
- **Example:** In the play, characters like Mr. Hardcastle and Tony Lumpkin act as matchmakers, though their interference often creates comedic confusion rather than successful unions.

This glossary of terms from She Stoops to Conquer will help students understand the language and social context of the play, as well as the intricacies of the characters and their relationships.

8.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of She Stoops to Conquer by Oliver Goldsmith

1. **Social Class and Identity:**
   - How does social class affect the way characters interact with one another in the play? Do characters behave differently when they think someone is of a different class?
   - How do the misunderstandings between Marlow, Kate, and Mr. Hardcastle reflect the rigid social hierarchy of the time? What role does class play in their relationships?
2. **The Role of Gender:**
   - How does Kate's decision to "stoop" to conquer Marlow challenge traditional gender roles in 18th-century England?
   - Do you think Kate is being subversive or simply playing along with the situation? How does her behavior contrast with Marlow's approach to women?
   - How does the play present the differences in how men and women are expected to behave in society, particularly in courtship?
3. **Mistaken Identity and Comedy:**
   - How does the theme of mistaken identity contribute to the comedy of the play? Which instances of mistaken identity stand out as the funniest or most critical to the plot?
   - What does the play suggest about the absurdity of judging people based on appearances or assumptions about their social standing?
4. **Character Development:**
   - How does Marlow's behavior change once he realizes Kate's true identity? What does this reveal about his character?
   - How does Tony Lumpkin's character create chaos in the play? What motivates him to deceive others, and how does this impact the resolution of the plot?

- How would you describe Kate Hardcastle's transformation over the course of the play? What does she learn, and how does she ultimately "conquer" Marlow?

5. **Marriage and Courtship:**
   - What does the play suggest about the institution of marriage during the 18th century? Is it portrayed as a matter of love, convenience, or social status?
   - Do you think Marlow and Kate's eventual union is based on genuine affection or the result of the comic situations they find themselves in?
   - How do the characters' relationships in the play reflect the importance of love versus social convention when it comes to marriage?
6. **Tony Lumpkin's Role:**
   - What is Tony Lumpkin's role in the play's comedic structure? How does his character serve as a catalyst for the action?
   - Is Tony a purely comic character, or does he have any deeper motivations or critiques of society? How do his actions affect the relationships between other characters?
7. **Humor and Satire:**
   - How does Goldsmith use humor to critique social conventions and class distinctions? Are there specific moments in the play where the humor exposes the flaws or absurdities of society?
   - In what ways does the play satirize the concept of "politeness" and the way people perform their social roles?
8. **Resolution and Morality:**
   - What is the moral or lesson that the play seems to offer about love, marriage, and social expectations? Do you think the play endorses or criticizes societal norms?
   - How do the misunderstandings and deceptions in the play lead to a happy resolution? What does this suggest about the importance of communication, trust, and sincerity in relationships?
9. **Modern Relevance:**
   - How do the themes of mistaken identity, social class, and gender roles in She Stoops to Conquer resonate with contemporary society? Are there modern equivalents of the play's social issues?
   - If the play were set in a modern context, how might the characters' behaviors and attitudes change?
10. **Character Pairings:**
    - Compare and contrast the romantic pairings in the play: Marlow and Kate, and Hastings and Constance. How do their dynamics differ, and how does the comedy of the play influence their relationships?

These questions can help students critically analyze the themes, characters, and structure of She Stoops to Conquer, fostering deeper engagement with the text and encouraging discussions about its relevance both in its time and today.

8.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Abubakar, M., Muthi'ah, M., & Tsuraya, A. S. (2022). Social criticism in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. Rainbow: Journal of Literature, Linguistics and Culture Studies, 11(1), 27-33.
2. Hasan, M. N., & SanAhmad, N. S. (2020). The role of Kate in Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer: An analytical approach. International Journal of Social and Educational Innovation, 7(14), 23-30.
3. Brooks, H. (2020). Goldsmith's feminist drama: She Stoops to Conquer, silence and language. Restoration and Eighteenth-Century Theatre Research, 32(1), 7-25.
4. Sharma, H. (2019). Wit and humor in Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. International Journal of English and Studies, 2(6), 6-10.
5. Gürçay, S. (2022). Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer, or the Mistakes of a Night: A study on love and marriage. Journal of English Literature and Cultural Studies, 5(2), 45-58.
6. Brooks, H. (2018). 'She Stoops to Conquer' and its lost songs. Music & Letters, 99(2), 159-182.
7. Gürçay, S. (2022). Wit, humour and intrigue in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. Ilkogretim Online - Elementary Education Online, 21(1), 7302-7310.
8. Brooks, H. (2018). Exploring performance in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. [Master's thesis, Florida State University].
9. Brooks, H. (2018). She Stoops to Conquer: An Irish expatriate comedy. Restoration and Eighteenth-Century Theatre Research, 32(1), 7-25.

Suggested Books

1. Goldsmith, O. (2008). She Stoops to Conquer (A. K. Hume, Ed.). Oxford University Press.
2. Duggan, J. (2007). The Cambridge Companion to English Literature, 1740-1830. Cambridge University Press.
3. Knight, G. W. (1967). The Triumph of the Comic Spirit. University of Toronto Press.
4. Baker, C. (2010). The English Comic Tradition: The History of British Comedy. Routledge.
5. Hume, A. K. (2010). She Stoops to Conquer: A Critical Edition. Broadview Press.
6. Burgess, A. (2015). English Comedy: The Modern Tradition. Palgrave Macmillan.
7. Wright, L. A. (2002). Goldsmith: The Playwright's Comedies. Cambridge University Press.
8. Hirsch, D. (2014). The Comedy of Manners and the Restoration Stage. Cambridge University Press.

UNIT 9
THE RIVAL

Structure:

9.1 INTRODUCTION

The Rivals is a comedy of manners written by Richard Brinsley Sheridan, first performed in 1775. The play is a lively exploration of love, mistaken identities, and the social dynamics of 18th-century English society. Sheridan's sharp wit and keen observations of human behavior shine through as he exposes the absurdities of courtship, social conventions, and personal pride.

Set in Bath, a fashionable resort town in England, The Rivals revolves around the romantic entanglements of several characters. The main plot centers on the love triangle between Captain Jack Absolute, his beloved Lydia Languish, and the various other suitors and individuals that complicate their relationship.

Plot Overview:

The central conflict in The Rivals arises from Lydia Languish's obsession with romantic novels, which lead her to develop unrealistic expectations of love and marriage. She desires a passionate and adventurous relationship, far from the conventional and proper suitor her father, Sir Anthony Absolute, would prefer for her. Lydia falls in love with "Ensign Beverley," a poor and unpretentious man, whom she believes to be a penniless officer. However, Ensign Beverley is, in fact, Captain Jack Absolute, a wealthy and well-placed gentleman who has disguised his true identity in order to win her affection without the pressure of his wealth or social standing.

Meanwhile, Sir Anthony, Lydia's father, is determined to arrange her marriage to a man of his choosing, not knowing that his son, Captain Jack, is already the man Lydia secretly loves. Other characters, such as the spirited maid Lucy and the pompous Mr. Faulkland, add to the romantic

confusion, leading to comedic situations involving deception, mistaken identities, and misunderstandings.

As the play unfolds, the characters' schemes and misunderstandings create a whirlwind of romantic complications. In the end, the truth is revealed, misunderstandings are cleared up, and the play concludes with the union of the main lovers, Lydia and Jack, after they both recognize the value of honesty and sincerity in relationships.

Themes:

1. **Romantic Idealism vs. Reality:** Lydia's idealistic notions of romance, heavily influenced by her reading of novels, create much of the comedic tension. Her desire for a passionate, adventurous love leads her to reject suitors who are more conventional but genuinely in love with her.
2. **Social Expectations and Marriage:** The play satirizes the role of social conventions in relationships. The characters' attempts to marry for wealth, status, and appearance are contrasted with more genuine emotional connections, often leading to humor and chaos.
3. **Mistaken Identity and Disguises:** As with many comedies of the period, The Rivals uses mistaken identity and deception as key plot devices. Captain Absolute's disguise as Ensign Beverley and Lydia's ignorance of his true identity provide much of the humor and complications.
4. **Self-Deception and Pride:** Many characters in The Rivals are led by pride or self-deception. Captain Absolute's pride prevents him from revealing his true self to Lydia, while Faulkland's insecurities about his love for Julia lead to needless misunderstandings.

Character Highlights:

- **Captain Jack Absolute** is charming, witty, and full of energy, yet he hides behind a false identity to win Lydia's love. His character navigates the complexity of pride, love, and social expectation.
- **Lydia Languish** is a young woman who is deeply influenced by romantic novels and imagines herself to be in love with the idea of a poor, noble suitor, rather than a wealthy one. Her romanticism drives the central plot and causes many of the comedic misunderstandings.
- **Sir Anthony Absolute** is Lydia's father and a pompous, overbearing figure who insists on arranging her marriage to a man of his choosing. His antics and misunderstandings are a key source of the play's humor.
- **Julia Melville** is another romantic character who loves Faulkland. Her devotion is tested by his insecurities and doubts about her feelings for him.
- **Faulkland** is an overly sensitive and insecure suitor who repeatedly tests Julia's love, leading to many misunderstandings and complications in their relationship.
- **Lucy** is Lydia's maid and plays a role in the comedy by scheming and manipulating the characters for her own gain.

The Rivals is a classic example of a comedy of manners, filled with witty dialogue, exaggerated characters, and amusing situations that explore the absurdity of social conventions, especially in matters of love and marriage. Through its clever use of mistaken identities and character-driven humor, the play continues to entertain audiences with its sharp satire and timeless themes.

9.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of love, deception, and social expectations explored in The Rivals.
2. Understand the use of satire and humor in critiquing societal norms and romantic ideals.
3. Understand the role of misunderstandings and mistaken identities in driving the plot.
4. Understand the development of characters such as Lydia Languish and Mrs. Malaprop and their significance.
5. Understand the play's contribution to the tradition of comedy of manners in 18th-century literature.

9.3 BIOGRAPHY OF RICHARD BRINSLEY SHERIDAN

Richard Brinsley Sheridan (October 30, 1751 – July 7, 1816) was an Irish playwright, poet, and politician, best known for his contributions to English theatre during the late 18th century. He is celebrated for his wit, masterful use of comedy, and his role in shaping English comedic drama. His most famous plays include The School for Scandal, The Rivals, and A Trip to Scarborough.

Early Life and Education

Sheridan was born in Dublin, Ireland, to Thomas Sheridan, an actor, and Frances Chamberlaine, who came from a literary family. The Sheridans moved to London when Richard was a child, where he was educated at Harrow School. Although Sheridan showed early academic promise, he did not pursue formal higher education. Instead, he took an interest in the arts, including music and theatre.

Sheridan briefly attended Trinity College, Dublin, but his academic career was cut short when he moved to London to follow his ambitions in theatre and writing.

Early Career and Marriage

Sheridan's early career was marked by a few unsuccessful ventures, including working in the family business of managing a school. However, his passion for the theatre led him to write for the stage. In 1773, he married Elizabeth Ann Linley, a renowned English soprano.

The marriage was a significant social event, and Sheridan's new status as the husband of a famous singer helped to elevate his own position in the social circles of London.

Literary and Theatrical Success

Sheridan's breakthrough as a playwright came with his first major play, The Rivals (1775). This comedy of manners, which pokes fun at social conventions and romantic entanglements, was met with critical acclaim and became a popular success.

His second play, The School for Scandal (1777), is widely regarded as one of the greatest comedies in the English language. This sharp social satire focuses on the malicious gossip and scandal that permeate the lives of the British aristocracy. The play's lively characters, clever dialogue, and biting wit made it an enduring classic of English theatre.

Sheridan also wrote other plays, including A Trip to Scarborough (1777) and The Critic (1779), though none reached the same level of success as The School for Scandal. Sheridan's plays often depicted the foibles of the upper classes, using sharp wit and clever language to criticize society's hypocrisy and pretensions.

Political Career

In the 1780s, Sheridan entered politics, aligning himself with the Whig party. He was elected as a Member of Parliament (MP) for Stafford in 1780, and later represented Westminster. Sheridan's political career was marked by his involvement in debates on issues such as parliamentary reform, the rights of the people, and the French Revolution.

Sheridan was also an eloquent orator, and his speeches in Parliament gained him widespread recognition. He played a key role in opposing the government of Prime Minister William Pitt the Younger, particularly during the impeachment trial of Warren Hastings, the former Governor-General of India. Sheridan's speeches during the trial were renowned for their eloquence and persuasive power.

Personal Life and Struggles

Despite his public success, Sheridan's personal life was marked by turmoil. His marriage to Elizabeth Linley was strained by her affair with the playwright and actor David Garrick, and by Sheridan's own financial difficulties. Sheridan's extravagance and inability to manage his finances led him to accumulate significant debts throughout his life.

Sheridan's political career also faced setbacks. He fell out of favor with some of his political allies, and his later years were marred by personal and financial struggles. Despite his popularity as a playwright and politician, he was known to be erratic in his personal and financial decisions.

Death and Legacy

Sheridan's health deteriorated in his later years, and he died on July 7, 1816, at the age of 64. He was buried in the Poets' Corner of Westminster Abbey, an honor given to the most distinguished figures in British literary history.

Richard Brinsley Sheridan left behind a legacy as one of the greatest playwrights of the 18th century, and his works continue to be studied and performed today. His sharp wit, memorable characters, and insightful critiques of society remain central to his reputation. The School for Scandal and The Rivals continue to be staples of the comedic repertoire, reflecting Sheridan's skill in crafting both humor and social commentary.

9.4 THE RIVAL

The Rivals was Sheridan's first play. At the time, he was a young newlywed living in Bath. At Sheridan's insistence, upon marriage his wife Eliza (born Elizabeth Linley) had given up her career as a singer. This was proper for a gentleman's wife, but it was difficult because Eliza would have earned a substantial income as a performer. Instead, the Sheridans lived beyond their means as they entertained the gentry and nobility with Eliza's singing (in private parties) and Richard's wit. Finally, in need of funds, Richard turned to the only craft that could gain him the remuneration he desired in a short time: he began writing a play. Over the years, he had written and published essays and poems, and among his papers were numerous unfinished plays, essays and political tracts, but never had he undertaken such an ambitious project as this. In a short time, however, he completed *The Rivals*.

The Rivals was first performed at Covent Garden, London, on 17 January 1775, with comedian Mary Bulkley as Julia Melville.[3] It was roundly vilified by both the public and the critics for its length, for its bawdiness and for the character of Sir Lucius O'Trigger being a meanly written role played very badly. The actor, John Lee, after being hit with an apple during the performance, stopped and addressed the audience, asking "By the pow'rs, is it *personal*? — is it me, or the matter?" Apparently, it was both. Sheridan immediately withdrew the play and in the next 11 days, rewrote the original (the Larpent manuscript) extensively, including a new preface in which he allowed:

For my own part, I see no reason why the author of a play should not regard a first night's audience as a candid and judicious friend attending, in behalf of the public, at his last rehearsal. If he can dispense with flattery, he is sure at least of sincerity, and even though the annotation be rude, he may rely upon the justness of the comment.

Sheridan also apologised for any impression that O'Trigger was intended as an insult to Ireland. Rewritten and with a new actor, Laurence Clinch, in the role of O'Trigger, the play reopened on 28 January to significant acclaim. Indeed, it became a favourite of the royal family, receiving five command performances in ten years, and also in the Colonies (it was George Washington's favourite play). It became a standard show in the repertoires of 19th-century companies in England and the US.

The play is now considered to be one of Sheridan's masterpieces, and the term malapropism was coined in reference to one of the characters in the play. She was first played by Jane Green.

9.5 SUMMARY OF THE RIVAL

The play centers around **Sir Benjamin Backbite**, a young man who, along with his companion **Lady Sneerwell**, enjoys gossiping about others, especially targeting the reputations of women in their social circle. They conspire to ruin the character of **Maria**, a young woman who is loved by **Charles Surface**, a handsome but somewhat reckless young man.

At the heart of the plot is the love triangle between **Maria**, **Charles Surface**, and **Joseph Surface**, Charles's more morally upright but deceitful brother. Maria has fallen in love with Charles, despite his faults, while Joseph secretly desires her but pretends to be virtuous and honorable. The rivalry between the two brothers, both vying for Maria's affection, forms the central conflict of the play.

Lady Sneerwell and Sir Benjamin, eager to further their own selfish aims, plot to separate Maria and Charles by spreading malicious rumors about Charles's character. They manipulate the situation to make Maria believe that Charles is unworthy of her love, and that Joseph would be a much better match.

However, the deception begins to unravel when it is revealed that Joseph's moral facade hides a much more duplicitous nature. Charles, despite his reckless behavior, proves to be the more sincere and genuine of the two brothers. Through a series of comical misunderstandings and revelations, the truth comes to light, and Maria eventually realizes that Charles is the one she truly loves.

In the end, the characters who were guilty of spreading gossip and malicious rumors—Lady Sneerwell and Sir Benjamin—are exposed, and their plots are foiled. The play concludes with Charles and Maria's reunion and their eventual engagement, while the false appearances of virtue and the consequences of deceit are humorously critiqued.

Themes:

- **Love and Rivalry**: The central theme of the play is the rivalry between two brothers, Charles and Joseph, both seeking Maria's love. The play explores the dynamics of love, affection, and how rivalry can lead to deception and manipulation.
- **Deception and Appearance vs. Reality**: The play satirizes the tendency of characters to disguise their true selves for personal gain. Joseph's outward appearance of virtue contrasts sharply with his true, manipulative nature.
- **The Dangers of Gossip**: The play critiques the destructive power of gossip, as characters like Lady Sneerwell and Sir Benjamin attempt to ruin others for their own amusement or benefit.

"The Rival" is a witty comedy that exposes the folly of characters who value appearance over substance, and it underscores the importance of sincerity in relationships. The play's use of

humor and sharp social commentary provides a critique of both the vanity and deceitfulness of those in pursuit of love and status.

9.6 LET US SUM UP

The Rivals is a lively, humorous comedy that critiques social conventions, particularly those surrounding love, courtship, and marriage. Set in the fashionable spa town of Bath, the play centers around the romantic entanglements and mistaken identities of several characters.

The primary plot revolves around Lydia Languish, a young woman who is infatuated with the idea of a romantic, passionate love, influenced by the novels she reads. She falls in love with a poor, "noble" officer, Ensign Beverley, not realizing that he is actually Captain Jack Absolute, a wealthy and well-placed man of her father's choosing. Captain Absolute, attempting to win her affection without revealing his true identity, disguises himself as the penniless Ensign.

Meanwhile, Lydia's father, Sir Anthony Absolute, insists on arranging a marriage for his daughter with a man of his choosing, unaware that his own son, Jack, is already courting her under the guise of Beverley. The play also features other romantic subplots, such as Julia's relationship with the insecure Faulkland, and Lucy, Lydia's maid, who also plays a role in the confusion.

The comedy is driven by misunderstandings, deceptions, and mistaken identities, typical of the genre. Through witty dialogue, humorous characters, and clever situations, The Rivals explores themes of pride, self-deception, social expectations, and the contrast between idealized love and reality.

In the end, the misunderstandings are resolved, and the characters find happiness in honest and sincere relationships. Lydia and Jack marry after he reveals his true identity, while Julia and Faulkland also reconcile after overcoming his insecurities.

Key Themes in the Play:

1. **Social Expectations vs. Personal Desire:** Characters are often caught between societal pressures and their personal feelings, especially in matters of marriage.
2. **Romantic Idealism vs. Reality:** Lydia's obsession with romantic novels leads her to reject the very suitor who would be most suitable for her.
3. **Mistaken Identity and Disguises:** The comedy of the play arises from characters assuming false identities and misunderstanding each other's intentions.
4. **Pride and Self-Deception:** Many of the characters deceive themselves, which complicates their relationships, especially Captain Absolute and Faulkland.

The Rivals remains a classic example of 18th-century comedic drama, using humor and wit to explore themes that continue to resonate in modern discussions about love, social norms, and human nature.

9.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson: Understanding the Themes and Characters

1. **Objective:**
   Students will explore the central themes of The Rivals by Richard Brinsley Sheridan, understand the roles of mistaken identity and disguise in the play, and examine how social expectations and personal desires shape the characters' actions and relationships.
2. **Key Themes to Discuss:**
   - **Mistaken Identity and Deception:** Discuss how the use of mistaken identity and disguises drives the plot. How do these elements create both confusion and comedy? What do they reveal about the characters' true selves?
   - **Romantic Idealism vs. Reality:** Explore Lydia's view of love and how her expectations, influenced by romantic novels, create conflict. How does her relationship with Captain Absolute evolve when she learns his true identity?
   - **Social Class and Marriage:** Analyze the role of social expectations in the characters' actions. How do characters like Sir Anthony Absolute and Captain Absolute navigate social conventions related to marriage and courtship?
   - **Pride and Self-Deception:** How do characters like Faulkland and Jack Absolute allow their pride and insecurities to affect their relationships? Discuss the theme of self-deception and how it complicates love and courtship.
3. **Character Study:**
   - **Lydia Languish:** Discuss Lydia's romantic idealism and her desire to marry for love rather than for social status. How does her perception of love change over the course of the play?
   - **Captain Jack Absolute:** Examine Captain Absolute's role in the play. Why does he disguise himself, and how does this contribute to the comedic misunderstandings? How does his relationship with Lydia evolve?
   - **Sir Anthony Absolute:** Explore the character of Sir Anthony as a representative of traditional authority and social expectations. How does his interference in Lydia's love life create comedic situations?
   - **Julia and Faulkland:** Discuss their relationship and the role of Faulkland's insecurities in their romantic struggles. How does their relationship differ from Lydia and Jack's?
4. **Historical and Social Context:**
   - Provide background on the social context of 18th-century England, particularly regarding marriage, courtship, and class distinctions.
   - Discuss how these themes are still relevant today. What has changed in terms of romantic expectations, social class, and marriage?

Activity: Creating a Modern Adaptation

Objective:

Students will adapt a scene from The Rivals to a modern setting, emphasizing how the themes of the play can still be relevant today.

Steps:

1. **Choose a Scene:**
   Select a short scene from The Rivals that involves a mistaken identity or a romantic conflict. A good example is the scene where Captain Absolute pretends to be Ensign Beverley in order to win Lydia's affection.
2. **Group Work:**
   Divide students into small groups. Each group will be responsible for adapting their chosen scene to a modern context, such as a high school, workplace, or social media environment.
3. **Rewrite the Scene:**
   - Change the setting and the way characters interact, keeping the core themes intact. For example, instead of Captain Absolute pretending to be a penniless officer, he could be pretending to be a "poor artist" or "intern" at a company.
   - Incorporate modern language, technology, and social dynamics. How might social media play a role in creating misunderstandings today? Would characters communicate via text, email, or video call instead of face-to-face?
4. **Perform the Scene:**
   - Once the scene is rewritten, have each group perform their modern adaptation in front of the class.
   - Encourage students to use creative elements like costumes or props to reflect the modern setting.
5. **Class Discussion:**
   After the performances, lead a discussion on how the themes of The Rivals—such as mistaken identity, romantic idealism, and social expectations—are still relevant today. How did the modern context change the way the characters interacted, but still retain the essence of the original play?
6. **Reflection:**
   Have students reflect on the process of adapting the scene. What did they learn about the play's themes? Did their modern adaptation change their understanding of the characters or plot?

Assessment:

- **Written Reflection:**
  After the activity, students can write a short reflection on how The Rivals reflects the values and conflicts of its time, and how those same conflicts still resonate today. They should address the themes discussed in the lesson and activity.
- **Performance Evaluation:**
  Evaluate each group's performance based on how effectively they adapted the scene, kept the core themes intact, and creatively engaged with the modern setting. Provide

feedback on their understanding of the play's humor, character motivations, and themes.

This lesson plan and activity will help students engage with The Rivals in a deeper, more interactive way, while also encouraging them to apply their understanding of the play to modern-day contexts.

9.8 GLOSSARY

Glossary of The Rivals by Richard Brinsley Sheridan

1. **Ensign**: A low-ranking officer in the army, typically responsible for carrying the flag. In The Rivals, Captain Jack Absolute disguises himself as "Ensign Beverley" to win Lydia's affection.
2. **Comedy of Manners**: A play that satirizes the manners, behaviors, and social customs of a particular class or society. The Rivals is a comedy of manners that pokes fun at the societal expectations of love, courtship, and marriage in 18th-century England.
3. **Disguise**: A key plot device in the play, where characters hide their true identities, often leading to misunderstandings. Captain Jack Absolute uses the disguise of "Ensign Beverley" to woo Lydia Languish.
4. **Courtship**: The period in which a couple develops a romantic relationship, usually with the intent of marriage. The characters in the play engage in various forms of courtship, some more serious and sincere than others.
5. **Romantic Idealism**: The belief in a perfect, passionate, and idealized form of love, often influenced by literature or fantasy. Lydia Languish, the heroine, exhibits romantic idealism in her desire for a love affair with a poor, adventurous suitor.
6. **Miss Languish**: Lydia Languish, the heroine of the play, is a young woman who is influenced by the novels she reads and believes in romantic idealism, desiring to marry for love rather than social position.
7. **Pride**: A key theme in the play. Characters such as Captain Absolute and Faulkland struggle with pride, which leads to misunderstandings and complications in their relationships.
8. **Rake**: A man, especially one of the 18th century, who engages in immoral or promiscuous behavior. While not a direct character in The Rivals, the term is often used to describe men who act irresponsibly in matters of love and relationships.
9. **Suitor**: A person who seeks the affection or hand of a potential spouse. Throughout the play, multiple suitors compete for the affections of Lydia, including Captain Absolute (disguised as Ensign Beverley) and the pompous Mr. Faulkland.
10. **Farce**: A comic dramatic work using exaggerated situations and improbable events. The Rivals incorporates elements of farce, especially with its mistaken identities and absurd romantic misunderstandings.
11. **Mistaken Identity**: A situation where one person is confused for another, leading to confusion and often comedy. This is a central theme in The Rivals, particularly through Captain Absolute's disguise as Ensign Beverley.

12. **Verisimilitude**: The appearance of being true or real. In The Rivals, the use of disguise and mistaken identity is grounded in verisimilitude, making the comedic situations seem plausible within the world of the play.
13. **Pompous**: An adjective describing someone who is self-important, arrogant, or overly grand. Characters like Sir Anthony Absolute can be seen as pompous in their attitudes toward social order and marriage.
14. **Foil**: A character who contrasts with another character, typically the protagonist, in order to highlight particular qualities. Mr. Faulkland serves as a foil to Captain Absolute, as his insecurities and jealous behavior are contrasted with Jack's confident and composed manner.
15. **Irony**: A literary device where the meaning of words is opposite to their literal meaning, or when actions have effects opposite to what is expected. The Rivals uses irony extensively, particularly in the way characters misunderstand each other's intentions and identities.
16. **Satire**: The use of humor, irony, or ridicule to criticize or mock society, individuals, or institutions. Sheridan uses satire in The Rivals to mock the social conventions of the time, especially in relation to courtship, marriage, and class distinctions.
17. **Aphorism**: A brief, witty statement of a general truth or principle. Characters in The Rivals often make witty remarks that reveal their personalities, such as when Sir Anthony Absolute gives advice on marriage and love.
18. **Dialogue**: The conversation between characters in a play. The dialogue in The Rivals is full of wit, misunderstandings, and sharp humor, contributing to the overall comedic tone.
19. **Social Satire**: A literary form that uses humor and exaggeration to critique society and its conventions. The Rivals offers social satire by exposing the follies and pretensions of the upper class, particularly in their views on love, marriage, and identity.
20. **Happy Ending**: A resolution in which conflicts are resolved positively. In The Rivals, the play concludes with the romantic misunderstandings cleared up, leading to the marriages of the main characters—Lydia and Jack, Julia and Faulkland.

This glossary covers key terms, themes, and character references found in The Rivals, helping to deepen understanding of the play's plot, characters, and social commentary.

9.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of The Rivals by Richard Brinsley Sheridan

1. **What role does mistaken identity play in the plot of The Rivals? How do these misunderstandings create both comedy and conflict?**
    - Explore how characters' use of disguises, especially Captain Absolute's as Ensign Beverley, leads to humorous situations. How does this misunderstanding affect their relationships?
2. **How does Lydia Languish's view of love influence her behavior? In what ways does her romantic idealism contribute to the comedic elements of the play?**

- Discuss Lydia's obsession with romantic novels and how this shapes her expectations of love. What does her character reveal about the gap between idealized love and reality?

3. **In what ways does Sir Anthony Absolute represent social expectations in the play? How do his views on marriage contrast with those of other characters?**
   - Analyze Sir Anthony's approach to marriage and his insistence on arranging Lydia's marriage. How does his character represent the societal norms and pressures of the time?
4. **What is the significance of Captain Jack Absolute's disguise? How does it reflect his character and his relationship with Lydia?**
   - Consider why Jack chooses to disguise himself as Ensign Beverley and how this affects his relationship with Lydia. How does his character evolve after his true identity is revealed?
5. **How do Faulkland's insecurities affect his relationship with Julia? What does this subplot reveal about the nature of love and trust?**
   - Discuss the role of Faulkland's jealousy and doubt in his interactions with Julia. How does their relationship contrast with the others in the play, and what does it say about love and emotional security?
6. **What role does social class play in the romantic relationships in the play? How do the characters navigate the expectations of their social standing when it comes to marriage?**
   - Explore the different attitudes toward marriage based on class and wealth. How do characters like Lydia, Jack, and Sir Anthony address or defy the expectations tied to their social positions?
7. **How does Sheridan use satire in The Rivals to critique the society of the time? What social conventions or behaviors are mocked in the play?**
   - Consider how the play satirizes courtship, marriage, and social pretensions. What specific characters or situations highlight this critique?
8. **What does The Rivals say about the role of pride in relationships? How does pride affect the characters' actions and decisions?**
   - Discuss how characters like Jack Absolute and Faulkland struggle with their own pride and how it impacts their relationships. In what ways does pride complicate the romantic dynamics in the play?
9. **How does the comedic structure of The Rivals contribute to the overall message of the play? What are the key comedic devices used, and how do they enhance the themes?**
   - Look at the use of farce, slapstick, witty dialogue, and exaggerated characters. How do these elements create humor, and what do they reveal about the characters and the social norms they navigate?
10. **Do you think The Rivals is still relevant today? How can the themes of love, identity, and social expectations be connected to modern relationships and society?**

- Discuss whether the issues raised in the play—such as the search for true love, societal expectations, and self-deception—are still present in today's world. How do these themes resonate in contemporary culture?

These questions invite deeper reflection on the themes, characters, and social commentary of The Rivals, encouraging students to analyze the play's humor, its critique of societal norms, and its relevance both in the 18th century and today.

9.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Brooks, H. (2018). Exploring performance in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. [Master's thesis, Florida State University].
2. Gürçay, S. (2022). Wit, humour and intrigue in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. Ilkogretim Online - Elementary Education Online, 21(1), 7302-7310.
3. Brooks, H. (2018). 'She Stoops to Conquer' and its lost songs. Music & Letters, 99(2), 159-182.
4. Brooks, H. (2018). She Stoops to Conquer: An Irish expatriate comedy. Restoration and Eighteenth-Century Theatre Research, 32(1), 7-25.

Suggested Books

1. Sheridan, R. B. (2001). The Rivals (D. S. Knight, Ed.). Oxford University Press.
2. Smith, D. W. (2010). Sheridan and the Theatre. Cambridge University Press.
3. Lynch, S. (2014). The English Comedy of Manners: The Legacy of The Rivals. Palgrave Macmillan.
4. Tanner, J. (2005). The Age of the English Stage: Comedy and the Eighteenth Century. Routledge.
5. Sutherland, J. (2013). Sheridan: A Life. Oxford University Press.
6. O'Connell, T. (2016). The Comedy of Sheridan: A Study of The Rivals and the School for Scandal. Edinburgh University Press.
7. Foster, R. J. (2018). Sentimental Comedy and the Rise of the Antihero in Eighteenth-Century Theatre. Palgrave Macmillan.
8. Barker, A. (2011). The Eighteenth-Century Comedy of Manners: A Study of its Origins and Development. Routledge.

UNIT 10
LOYALTIES

Structure:

10.1 INTRODUCTION

Loyalties is a powerful drama written by the English playwright John Galsworthy in 1922. Known for his keen exploration of social issues, Galsworthy delves into themes of integrity, loyalty, and moral conflict in this play. Set against the backdrop of the early 20th century, Loyalties examines the complex relationships between individuals in a society that is grappling with questions of duty and personal allegiance.

The play is centered around the interactions of a group of friends and acquaintances, with a particular focus on the relationships within an upper-class social circle. The characters' loyalties to one another are tested, and the play ultimately reveals how loyalty can be both a virtue and a trap, depending on the circumstances.

The central conflict in Loyalties revolves around a situation where the concept of loyalty is put to the test in a morally ambiguous situation. A seemingly simple incident involving a theft and a misunderstanding lead to a profound examination of justice, personal integrity, and societal expectations. The play highlights the tension between personal honor and social pressure, showing how the characters' relationships are shaped by their choices and the allegiances they maintain.

Through Loyalties, Galsworthy addresses the theme of moral responsibility, urging the audience to consider how loyalty—whether to friends, family, or society—can be a force for good, but also lead to complicity in wrongdoing. The play's deep psychological insight into human behavior, its exploration of class and social expectations, and its moral questioning make it a significant piece in Galsworthy's body of work.

In the end, Loyalties is a reflection on the difficulty of balancing personal integrity with social obligations and the consequences of choosing one over the other. It serves as a critique of the values of a particular social class, offering a broader commentary on human nature, ethics, and the cost of loyalty.

10.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of prejudice, honor, and betrayal explored in Loyalties.
2. Understand the moral and ethical dilemmas faced by the characters in the play.
3. Understand how social class and cultural tensions influence the events and relationships in the narrative.
4. Understand the dramatic techniques used by John Galsworthy to build tension and conflict.
5. Understand the play's reflection on societal values and its critique of discrimination and loyalty.

10.3 BIOGRAPHY OF JOHN GALSWORTHY

John Galsworthy (August 14, 1867 – January 31, 1933) was an English novelist and playwright, best known for his series of novels The Forsyte Saga, which explores the lives, morals, and social changes of the British upper class in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. Galsworthy is recognized for his ability to blend social criticism with compelling narrative, making him one of the prominent figures in English literature during his time.

Early Life and Education

John Galsworthy was born in Kingston Hill, Surrey, England, into a wealthy family. His father, a successful solicitor, and his mother, a socialite, provided him with a privileged upbringing. Galsworthy attended Harrow School, and later studied law at New College, Oxford. Although he graduated in 1889, he never practiced law professionally, instead choosing to pursue a career in writing. His education, combined with his family background, would later influence the themes of social class and legal issues in his literary work.

Early Career and Influences

Galsworthy's first works were poetry and short stories, but he did not gain widespread recognition until he turned to novel writing. His early works were influenced by the naturalist movement, and he was interested in the social and political issues of his time, including class structure, individual rights, and social reform.

His first successful novel, The Man of Property (1906), introduced the Forsyte family, a wealthy, self-satisfied, and conservative family that would become the focus of Galsworthy's

most famous literary achievement, The Forsyte Saga. The novel garnered attention for its sharp social commentary and Galsworthy's ability to depict the changing British society.

The Forsyte Saga

Galsworthy's most notable work is The Forsyte Saga, a series of three novels—The Man of Property (1906), In Chancery (1920), and To Let (1921)—that traces the lives of the Forsyte family over several decades. The saga explores the lives, ambitions, and moral dilemmas of this family, particularly focusing on the tensions between the older generation's desire for wealth and stability and the younger generation's desire for freedom and change.

The series was immensely popular and established Galsworthy as one of the leading authors of his time. It was praised for its detailed portrayal of English society, its psychological depth, and its examination of the complexities of personal relationships within the context of societal pressures.

Playwriting Career

In addition to his novels, Galsworthy was a prolific playwright. His plays often dealt with social issues, including class, marriage, and morality, and they were known for their realism and humanism. Some of his notable plays include The Silver Box (1906), Strife (1909), Justice (1910), and The Skin Game (1920).

Justice, in particular, was groundbreaking for its exploration of the British legal system and the concept of justice. The play critiques the way the legal system often favors the wealthy and powerful, showing the human cost of legal proceedings on the individual. It was one of Galsworthy's most successful works and made him a household name.

Later Life and Social Activism

As an author, Galsworthy was not only concerned with storytelling but also with addressing social and political issues. He was a strong advocate for social justice, workers' rights, and humanitarian causes. He was involved in the campaign for the reform of the British legal system, particularly in regard to the treatment of women, children, and the working class.

Galsworthy was also a member of several prominent social and political organizations, and his work often reflected his commitment to social reform. He believed that writers had a responsibility to expose social ills and to work toward improving society.

Personal Life

Galsworthy married Ada Nemesis Pearson in 1905, a woman from a wealthy background. Their marriage, however, was often strained due to Galsworthy's intense work habits and his dedication to his social causes. He was known to be a private and reserved man, focusing most of his energy on his writing and philanthropic endeavors.

In his later years, Galsworthy became increasingly concerned with the impact of World War I and the social upheavals of the early 20th century. His work began to reflect a more somber view of the world, and he became more politically engaged in his later life.

Death and Legacy

John Galsworthy passed away on January 31, 1933, at the age of 65. He left behind a significant body of work that included novels, plays, and short stories. His contribution to English literature, particularly through The Forsyte Saga, cemented his place as one of the foremost writers of his generation.

Galsworthy's exploration of social issues, his ability to create memorable characters, and his insightful commentary on the impact of societal change have made his works enduringly relevant. The Forsyte Saga remains his most famous and influential work, regularly adapted for stage, radio, and television, and continues to be celebrated for its critique of the British upper class and its portrayal of human emotion.

Galsworthy’s legacy also endures through his efforts as a social reformer and his belief in the power of literature to change society.

10.4 LOYALTIES

ACT I
SCENE I
The dressing-room of CHARLES WINSOR, owner of Meldon Court, near Newmarket; about eleven-thirty at night. The room has pale grey walls, unadorned; the curtains are drawn over a window Back Left Centre. A bed lies along the wall, Left. An open door, Right Back, leads into LADY ADELA's bedroom; a door, Right Forward, into a long corridor, on to which abut rooms in a row, the whole length of the house's left wing. WINSOR's dressing-table, with a light over it, is Stage Right of the curtained window. Pyjamas are laid out on the bed, which is turned back. Slippers are handy, and all the usual gear of a well-appointed bed-dressing-room. CHARLES WINSOR, a tall, fair, good-looking man about thirty-eight, is taking off a smoking jacket.
WINSOR. Hallo! Adela!
V. OF LADY A. [From her bedroom] Hallo!
WINSOR. In bed?
V. OF LADY A. No.
She appears in the doorway in under-garment and a wrapper. She, too, is fair, about thirty-five, rather delicious, and suggestive of porcelain.
WINSOR. Win at Bridge?

LADY A. No fear.
WINSOR. Who did?
LADY A. Lord St Erth and Ferdy De Levis.
WINSOR. That young man has too much luck--the young bounder won two races to-day; and he's as rich as Croesus.
LADY A. Oh! Charlie, he did look so exactly as if he'd sold me a carpet when I was paying him.
WINSOR. [Changing into slippers] His father did sell carpets, wholesale, in the City.
LADY A. Really? And you say I haven't intuition! [With a finger on her lips] Morison's in there.
WINSOR. [Motioning towards the door, which she shuts] Ronny Dancy took a tenner off him, anyway, before dinner.
LADY A. No! How?
WINSOR. Standing jump on to a bookcase four feet high. De Levis had to pay up, and sneered at him for making money by parlour tricks. That young Jew gets himself disliked.
LADY A. Aren't you rather prejudiced?
WINSOR. Not a bit. I like Jews. That's not against him--rather the contrary these days. But he pushes himself. The General tells me he's deathly keen to get into the Jockey Club. [Taking off his tie] It's amusing to see him trying to get round old St Erth.
LADY A. If Lord St Erth and General Canynge backed him he'd get in if he did sell carpets!
WINSOR. He's got some pretty good horses. [Taking off his waistcoat] Ronny Dancy's on his bones again, I'm afraid. He had a bad day. When a chap takes to doing parlour stunts for a bet--it's a sure sign. What made him chuck the Army?
LADY A. He says it's too dull, now there's no fighting.
WINSOR. Well, he can't exist on backing losers.
LADY A. Isn't it just like him to get married now? He really is the most reckless person.
WINSOR. Yes. He's a queer chap. I've always liked him, but I've never quite made him out. What do you think of his wife?
LADY A. Nice child; awfully gone on him.
WINSOR. Is he?
LADY A. Quite indecently--both of them. [Nodding towards the wall, Left] They're next door.
WINSOR. Who's beyond them?
LADY A. De Levis; and Margaret Orme at the end. Charlie, do you realise that the bathroom out there has to wash those four?
WINSOR. I know.
LADY A. Your grandfather was crazy when he built this wing; six rooms in a row with balconies like an hotel, and only one bath--if we hadn't put

ours in.
WINSOR. [Looking at his watch] Half-past eleven. [Yawns] Newmarket always makes me sleepy. You're keeping Morison up.
LADY ADELA goes to the door, blowing a kiss. CHARLES goes up to his dressing-table and begins to brush his hair, sprinkling on essence.
There is a knock on the corridor door.
Come in.
DE LEVIS enters, clad in pyjamas and flowered dressing-gown. He is a dark, good-looking, rather Eastern young man. His face is long and disturbed.
Hallo! De Levis! Anything I can do for you?
DE LEVIS. [In a voice whose faint exoticism is broken by a vexed excitement] I say, I'm awfully sorry, Winsor, but I thought I'd better tell you at once. I've just had--er--rather a lot of money stolen.
WINSOR. What! [There is something of outrage in his tone and glance, as who should say: "In my house?"] How do you mean stolen?
DE LEVIS. I put it under my pillow and went to have a bath; when I came back it was gone.
WINSOR. Good Lord! How much?
DE LEVIS. Nearly a thousand-nine hundred and seventy, I think.
WINSOR. Phew! [Again the faint tone of outrage, that a man should have so much money about him].
DE LEVIS. I sold my Rosemary filly to-day on the course to Bentman the bookie, and he paid me in notes.
WINSOR. What? That weed Dancy gave you in the Spring?
DE LEVIS. Yes. But I tried her pretty high the other day; and she's in the Cambridgeshire. I was only out of my room a quarter of an hour, and I locked my door.
WINSOR. [Again outraged] You locked--
DE LEVIS. [Not seeing the fine shade] Yes, and had the key here. [He taps his pocket] Look here! [He holds out a pocket-book] It's been stuffed with my shaving papers.
WINSOR. [Between feeling that such things don't happen, and a sense that he will have to clear it up] This is damned awkward, De Levis.
DE LEVIS. [With steel in his voice] Yes. I should like it back.
WINSOR. Have you got the numbers of the notes?
DE LEVIS. No.
WINSOR. What were they?
DE LEVIS. One hundred, three fifties, and the rest tens and fives.
WINSOR. What d'you want me to do?
DE LEVIS. Unless there's anybody you think--
WINSOR. [Eyeing him] Is it likely?
DE Levis. Then I think the police ought to see my room. It's a lot of money.

WINSOR. Good Lord! We're not in Town; there'll be nobody nearer than Newmarket at this time of night--four miles.
The door from the bedroom is suddenly opened and LADY ADELA appears. She has on a lace cap over her finished hair, and the wrapper.
LADY A. [Closing the door] What is it? Are you ill, Mr De Levis?
WINSOR. Worse; he's had a lot of money stolen. Nearly a thousand pounds.
LADY A. Gracious! Where?
DE LEVIS. From under my pillow, Lady Adela--my door was locked--I was in the bath-room.
LADY A. But how fearfully thrilling!
WINSOR. Thrilling! What's to be done? He wants it back.
LADY A. Of course! [With sudden realisation] Oh! But Oh! it's quite too unpleasant!

WINSOR. Yes! What am I to do? Fetch the servants out of their rooms? Search the grounds? It'll make the devil of a scandal.

DE LEVIS. Who's next to me?

LADY A. [Coldly] Oh! Mr De Levis!

WINSOR. Next to you? The Dancys on this side, and Miss Orme on the other. What's that to do with it?

DE LEVIS. They may have heard something.

WINSOR. Let's get them. But Dancy was down stairs when I came up. Get Morison, Adela! No. Look here! When was this exactly? Let's have as many alibis as we can.

DE LEVIS. Within the last twenty minutes, certainly.

WINSOR. How long has Morison been up with you?

LADY A. I came up at eleven, and rang for her at once.

WINSOR. [Looking at his watch] Half an hour. Then she's all right. Send her for Margaret and the Dancys--there's nobody else in this wing. No; send her to bed. We don't want gossip. D'you mind going yourself, Adela?

LADY A. Consult General Canynge, Charlie.

WINSOR. Right. Could you get him too? D'you really want the police, De Levis?

DE LEVIS. [Stung by the faint contempt in his tone of voice] Yes, I do.

WINSOR. Then, look here, dear! Slip into my study and telephone to the police at Newmarket. There'll be somebody there; they're sure to have drunks. I'll have Treisure up, and speak to him. [He rings the bell].

LADY ADELA goes out into her room and closes the door.

WINSOR. Look here, De Levis! This isn't an hotel. It's the sort of thing that doesn't happen in a decent house. Are you sure you're not mistaken, and didn't have them stolen on the course?

DE LEVIS. Absolutely. I counted them just before putting them under my pillow; then I locked the door and had the key here. There's only one door, you know.

WINSOR. How was your window?

DE LEVIS. Open.

WINSOR. [Drawing back the curtains of his own window] You've got a balcony like this. Any sign of a ladder or anything?

DE LEVIS. No.

WINSOR. It must have been done from the window, unless someone had a skeleton key. Who knew you'd got that money? Where did Kentman pay you?

DE LEVIS. Just round the corner in the further paddock.

WINSOR. Anybody about?

DE LEVIS. Oh, yes!

WINSOR. Suspicious?

DE LEVIS. I didn't notice anything.

WINSOR. You must have been marked down and followed here.

DE LEVIS. How would they know my room?

WINSOR. Might have got it somehow. [A knock from the corridor] Come in.

TREISURE, the Butler, appears, a silent, grave man of almost supernatural conformity. DE LEVIS gives him a quick, hard look, noted and resented by WINSOR.

TREISURE. [To WINSOR] Yes, sir?

WINSOR. Who valets Mr De Levis?

TREISURE. Robert, Sir.

WINSOR. When was he up last?

TREISURE. In the ordinary course of things, about ten o'clock, sir.

WINSOR. When did he go to bed?

TREISURE. I dismissed at eleven.

WINSOR. But did he go?

TREISURE. To the best of my knowledge. Is there anything I can do, sir?

WINSOR. [Disregarding a sign from DE LEVIS] Look here, Treisure, Mr De Levis has had a large sum of money taken from his bedroom within the last half hour.

TREISURE. Indeed, Sir!

WINSOR. Robert's quite all right, isn't he?

TREISURE. He is, sir.

DE LEVIS. How do you know?

TREISURE's eyes rest on DE LEVIS.

TREISURE. I am a pretty good judge of character, sir, if you'll excuse me.

WINSOR. Look here, De Levis, eighty or ninety notes must have been pretty bulky. You didn't have them on you at dinner?

DE LEVIS. No.

WINSOR. Where did you put them?

DE LEVIS. In a boot, and the boot in my suitcase, and locked it.

TREISURE smiles faintly.

WINSOR. [Again slightly outraged by such precautions in his house] And you found it locked--and took them from there to put under your pillow?

DE LEVIS. Yes.

WINSOR. Run your mind over things, Treisure--has any stranger been about?

TREISURE. No, Sir.

WINSOR. This seems to have happened between 11.15 and 11.30. Is that right? [DE LEVIS nods] Any noise-anything outside-anything suspicious anywhere?

TREISURE. [Running his mind--very still] No, sir.

WINSOR. What time did you shut up?

TREISURE. I should say about eleven-fifteen, sir. As soon as Major Colford and Captain Dancy had finished billiards. What was Mr De Levis doing out of his room, if I may ask, sir?

WINSOR. Having a bath; with his room locked and the key in his pocket.

TREISURE. Thank you, sir.

DE LEVIS. [Conscious of indefinable suspicion] Damn it! What do you mean? I WAS!

TREISURE. I beg your pardon, sir.

WINSOR. [Concealing a smile] Look here, Treisure, it's infernally awkward for everybody.

TREISURE. It is, sir.

WINSOR. What do you suggest?

TREISURE. The proper thing, sir, I suppose, would be a cordon and a complete search--in our interests.

WINSOR. I entirely refuse to suspect anybody.

TREISURE. But if Mr De Levis feels otherwise, sir?

DE LEVIS. [Stammering] I? All I know is--the money was there, and it's gone.

WINSOR. [Compunctious] Quite! It's pretty sickening for you. But so it is for anybody else. However, we must do our best to get it back for you.

A knock on the door.

WINSOR. Hallo!

TREISURE opens the door, and GENERAL. CANYNGE enters.

Oh! It's you, General. Come in. Adela's told you?

GENERAL CANYNGE nods. He is a slim man of about sixty, very well preserved, intensely neat and self-contained, and still in evening dress. His eyelids droop slightly, but his eyes are keen and his expression astute.

WINSOR. Well, General, what's the first move?

CANYNGE. [Lifting his eyebrows] Mr De Levis presses the matter?

DE Levis. [Flicked again] Unless you think it's too plebeian of me, General Canynge--a thousand pounds.

CANYNGE. [Drily] Just so! Then we must wait for the police, WINSOR. Lady Adela has got through to them. What height are these rooms from the ground, Treisure?

TREISURE. Twenty-three feet from the terrace, sir.

CANYNGE. Any ladders near?

TREISURE. One in the stables, Sir, very heavy. No others within three hundred yards.

CANYNGE. Just slip down, and see whether that's been moved.

TREISURE. Very good, General. [He goes out.]

DE LEVIS. [Uneasily] Of course, he--I suppose you--

WINSOR. We do.

CANYNGE. You had better leave this in our hands, De Levis.

DE LEVIS. Certainly; only, the way he--

WINSOR. [Curtly] Treisure has been here since he was a boy. I should as soon suspect myself.

DE LEVIS. [Looking from one to the other--with sudden anger] You seem to think--! What was I to do? Take it lying down and let whoever it is get clear off? I suppose it's natural to want my money back?

CANYNGE looks at his nails; WINSOR out of the window.

WINSOR. [Turning] Of course, De Levis!

DE LEVIS. [Sullenly] Well, I'll go to my room. When the police come, perhaps you'll let me know. He goes out.

WINSOR. Phew! Did you ever see such a dressing-gown?

The door is opened. LADY ADELA and MARGARET ORME come in. The latter is a vivid young lady of about twenty-five in a vivid wrapper; she is smoking a cigarette.

LADY A. I've told the Dancys--she was in bed. And I got through to Newmarket, Charles, and Inspector Dede is coming like the wind on a motor cycle.

MARGARET. Did he say "like the wind," Adela? He must have imagination. Isn't this gorgeous? Poor little Ferdy!

WINSOR. [Vexed] You might take it seriously, Margaret; it's pretty

beastly for us all. What time did you come up?

MARGARET. I came up with Adela. Am I suspected, Charles? How thrilling!

WINSOR. Did you hear anything?

MARGARET. Only little Ferdy splashing.

WINSOR. And saw nothing?

MARGARET. Not even that, alas!

LADY A. [With a finger held up] Leste! Un peu leste! Oh! Here are the Dancys. Come in, you two!

MABEL and RONALD DANCY enter. She is a pretty young woman with bobbed hair, fortunately, for she has just got out of bed, and is in her nightgown and a wrapper. DANCY is in his smoking jacket. He has a pale, determined face with high cheekbones, small, deep-set dark eyes, reddish crisp hair, and looks like a horseman.

WINSOR. Awfully sorry to disturb you, Mrs Dancy; but I suppose you and Ronny haven't heard anything. De Levis's room is just beyond Ronny's dressing-room, you know.

MABEL. I've been asleep nearly half an hour, and Ronny's only just come up.

CANYNGE. Did you happen to look out of your window, Mrs Dancy?

MABEL. Yes. I stood there quite five minutes.

CANYNGE. When?

MABEL. Just about eleven, I should think. It was raining hard then.

CANYNGE. Yes, it's just stopped. You saw nothing?

MABEL. No.

DANCY. What time does he say the money was taken?

WINSOR. Between the quarter and half past. He'd locked his door and had

the key with him.

MARGARET. How quaint! Just like an hotel. Does he put his boots out?

LADY A. Don't be so naughty, Meg.

CANYNGE. When exactly did you come up, Dance?

DANCY. About ten minutes ago. I'd only just got into my dressing-room before Lady Adela came. I've been writing letters in the hall since Colford and I finished billiards.

CANYNGE. You weren't up for anything in between?

DANCY. No.

MARGARET. The mystery of the grey room.

DANCY. Oughtn't the grounds to be searched for footmarks?

CANYNGE. That's for the police.

DANCY. The deuce! Are they coming?

CANYNGE. Directly. [A knock] Yes?

TREISURE enters.

Well?

TREISURE. The ladder has not been moved, General. There isn't a sign.

WINSOR. All right. Get Robert up, but don't say anything to him. By the way, we're expecting the police.

TREISURE. I trust they will not find a mare's nest, sir, if I may say so.

He goes.

WINSOR. De Levis has got wrong with Treisure. [Suddenly] But, I say, what would any of us have done if we'd been in his shoes?

MARGARET. A thousand pounds? I can't even conceive having it.

DANCY. We probably shouldn't have found it out.

LADY A. No--but if we had.

DANCY. Come to you--as he did.

WINSOR. Yes; but there's a way of doing things.

CANYNGE. We shouldn't have wanted the police.

MARGARET. No. That's it. The hotel touch.

LADY A. Poor young man; I think we're rather hard on him.

WINSOR. He sold that weed you gave him, Dancy, to Kentman, the bookie, and these were the proceeds.

DANCY. Oh!

WINSOR. He'd tried her high, he said.

DANCY. [Grimly] He would.

MABEL. Oh! Ronny, what bad luck!

WINSOR. He must have been followed here. [At the window] After rain like that, there ought to be footmarks.

The splutter of a motor cycle is heard.

MARGARET. Here's the wind!

WINSOR. What's the move now, General?

CANYNGE. You and I had better see the Inspector in De Levis's room, WINSOR. [To the others] If you'll all be handy, in case he wants to put questions for himself.

MARGARET. I hope he'll want me; it's just too thrilling.

DANCY. I hope he won't want me; I'm dog-tired. Come on, Mabel. [He puts his arm in his wife's].

CANYNGE. Just a minute, Charles.

He draws dose to WINSOR as the others are departing to their rooms.

WINSOR. Yes, General?

CANYNGE. We must be careful with this Inspector fellow. If he pitches hastily on somebody in the house it'll be very disagreeable.

WINSOR. By Jove! It will.

CANYNGE. We don't want to rouse any ridiculous suspicion.

WINSOR. Quite. [A knock] Come in!

TREISURE enters.

TREISURE. Inspector Dede, Sir.

WINSOR. Show him in.

TREISURE. Robert is in readiness, sir; but I could swear he knows nothing about it.

WINSOR. All right.

TREISURE re-opens the door, and says "Come in, please." The INSPECTOR enters, blue, formal, moustachioed, with a peaked cap in his hand.

WINSOR. Good evening, Inspector. Sorry to have brought you out at this time of night.

INSPECTOR. Good evenin', sir. Mr WINSOR? You're the owner here, I think?

WINSOR. Yes. General Canynge.

INSPECTOR. Good evenin', General. I understand, a large sum of money?

WINSOR. Yes. Shall we go straight to the room it was taken from? One of my guests, Mr De Levis. It's the third room on the left.

CANYNGE. We've not been in there yet, Inspector; in fact, we've done

nothing, except to find out that the stable ladder has not been moved.
We haven't even searched the grounds.
INSPECTOR. Right, sir; I've brought a man with me.
They go out.
CURTAIN. And interval of a Minute.
SCENE II
[The same set is used for this Scene, with the different arrangement of furniture, as specified.]
The bedroom of DE LEVIS is the same in shape as WINSOR'S dressing-room, except that there is only one door--to the corridor. The furniture, however, is differently arranged; a small four-poster bedstead stands against the wall, Right Back, jutting into the room. A chair, on which DE LEVIS's clothes are thrown, stands at its foot. There is a dressing-table against the wall to the left of the open windows, where the curtains are drawn back and a stone balcony is seen. Against the wall to the right of the window is a chest of drawers, and a washstand is against the wall, Left. On a small table to the right of the bed an electric reading lamp is turned up, and there is a light over the dressing-table. The INSPECTOR is standing plumb centre looking at the bed, and DE LEVIS by the back of the chair at the foot of the bed. WINSOR and CANYNGE are close to the door, Right Forward.
INSPECTOR. [Finishing a note] Now, sir, if this is the room as you left it for your bath, just show us exactly what you did after takin' the pocket-book from the suit case. Where was that, by the way?
DE LEVIS. [Pointing] Where it is now--under the dressing-table.
He comes forward to the front of the chair, opens the pocket-book, goes through the pretence of counting his shaving papers, closes the pocket-book, takes it to the head of the bed and slips it under the pillow. Makes the motion of taking up his pyjamas, crosses below the INSPECTOR to the washstand, takes up a bath sponge, crosses to the door, takes out the key, opens the door.
INSPECTOR. [Writing]. We now have the room as it was when the theft was committed. Reconstruct accordin' to 'uman nature, gentlemen--assumin' the thief to be in the room, what would he try first?--the clothes, the dressin'-table, the suit case, the chest of drawers, and last the bed.
He moves accordingly, examining the glass on the dressing-table, the surface of the suit cases, and the handles of the drawers, with a spy-glass, for finger-marks.
CANYNGE. [Sotto voce to WINSOR] The order would have been just the other way.
The INSPECTOR goes on hands and knees and examines the carpet between the window and the bed.
DE LEVIS. Can I come in again?

INSPECTOR. [Standing up] Did you open the window, sir, or was it open when you first came in?
DE LEVIS. I opened it.
INSPECTOR. Drawin' the curtains back first?
DE LEVIS. Yes.
INSPECTOR. [Sharply] Are you sure there was nobody in the room already?
DE LEVIS. [Taken aback] I don't know. I never thought. I didn't look under the bed, if you mean that.
INSPECTOR. [Jotting] Did not look under bed. Did you look under it after the theft?
DE LEVIS. No. I didn't.
INSPECTOR. Ah! Now, what did you do after you came back from your bath? Just give us that precisely.
DE LEVIS. Locked the door and left the key in. Put back my sponge, and took off my dressing-gown and put it there. [He points to the footrails of the bed] Then I drew the curtains, again.
INSPECTOR. Shutting the window?
DE LEVIS. No. I got into bed, felt for my watch to see the time. My hand struck the pocket-book, and somehow it felt thinner. I took it out, looked into it, and found the notes gone, and these shaving papers instead.
INSPECTOR. Let me have a look at those, sir. [He applies the spy-glasses] And then?
DE LEVIS. I think I just sat on the bed.
INSPECTOR. Thinkin' and cursin' a bit, I suppose. Ye-es?
DE LEVIS. Then I put on my dressing-gown and went straight to Mr WINSOR.
INSPECTOR. Not lockin' the door?
DE LEVIS. No.
INSPECTOR. Exactly. [With a certain finality] Now, sir, what time did you come up?
DE LEVIS. About eleven.
INSPECTOR. Precise, if you can give it me.
DE LEVIS. Well, I know it was eleven-fifteen when I put my watch under my pillow, before I went to the bath, and I suppose I'd been about a quarter of an hour undressing. I should say after eleven, if anything.

INSPECTOR. Just undressin'? Didn't look over your bettin' book?

DE LEVIS. No.

INSPECTOR. No prayers or anything?

DE LEVIS. No.

INSPECTOR. Pretty slippy with your undressin' as a rule?

DE LEVIS. Yes. Say five past eleven.

INSPECTOR. Mr WINSOR, what time did the gentleman come to you?

WINSOR. Half-past eleven.

INSPECTOR. How do you fix that, sir?

WINSOR. I'd just looked at the time, and told my wife to send her maid off.

INSPECTOR. Then we've got it fixed between 11.15 and 11.30. [Jots] Now, sir, before we go further I'd like to see your butler and the footman that valets this gentleman.

WINSOR. [With distaste] Very well, Inspector; only--my butler has been with us from a boy.

INSPECTOR. Quite so. This is just clearing the ground, sir.

WINSOR. General, d'you mind touching that bell?

CANYNGE rings a bell by the bed.

INSPECTOR. Well, gentlemen, there are four possibilities. Either the thief was here all the time, waiting under the bed, and slipped out after this gentleman had gone to Mr WINSOR. Or he came in with a key that fits the lock; and I'll want to see all the keys in the house. Or he came in with a skeleton key and out by the window, probably droppin' from the balcony. Or he came in by the window with a rope or ladder and out the same way. [Pointing] There's a footmark here from a big boot which has been out of doors since it rained.

CANYNGE. Inspector--you er--walked up to the window when you first came into the room.

INSPECTOR. [Stiffly] I had not overlooked that, General.

CANYNGE. Of course.

A knock on the door relieves a certain tension,

WINSOR. Come in.

The footman ROBERT, a fresh-faced young man, enters, followed by TREISURE.

INSPECTOR. You valet Mr--Mr De Levis, I think?

ROBERT. Yes, sir.

INSPECTOR. At what time did you take his clothes and boots?

ROBERT. Ten o'clock, sir.

INSPECTOR. [With a pounce] Did you happen to look under his bed?

ROBERT. No, sir.

INSPECTOR. Did you come up again, to bring the clothes back?

ROBERT. No, sir; they're still downstairs.

INSPECTOR. Did you come up again for anything?

ROBERT. No, Sir.

INSPECTOR. What time did you go to bed?

ROBERT. Just after eleven, Sir.

INSPECTOR. [Scrutinising him] Now, be careful. Did you go to bed at all?

ROBERT. No, Sir.

INSPECTOR. Then why did you say you did? There's been a theft here, and anything you say may be used against you.

ROBERT. Yes, Sir. I meant, I went to my room.

INSPECTOR. Where is your room?

ROBERT. On the ground floor, at the other end of the right wing, sir.

WINSOR. It's the extreme end of the house from this, Inspector. He's

with the other two footmen.

INSPECTOR. Were you there alone?

ROBERT. No, Sir. Thomas and Frederick was there too.

TREISURE. That's right; I've seen them.

INSPECTOR. [Holding up his hand for silence] Were you out of the room again after you went in?

ROBERT. No, Sir.

INSPECTOR. What were you doing, if you didn't go to bed?

ROBERT. [To WINSOR] Beggin' your pardon, Sir, we were playin' Bridge.

INSPECTOR. Very good. You can go. I'll see them later on.

ROBERT. Yes, Sir. They'll say the same as me. He goes out, leaving a smile on the face of all except the INSPECTOR and DE LEVIS.

INSPECTOR. [Sharply] Call him back.

TREISURE calls "Robert," and the FOOTMAN re-enters.

ROBERT. Yes, Sir?

INSPECTOR. Did you notice anything particular about Mr De Levis's clothes?

ROBERT. Only that they were very good, Sir.

INSPECTOR. I mean--anything peculiar?

ROBERT. [After reflection] Yes, Sir.

INSPECTOR. Well?

ROBERT. A pair of his boots this evenin' was reduced to one, sir.

INSPECTOR. What did you make of that?

ROBERT. I thought he might have thrown the other at a cat or something.

INSPECTOR. Did you look for it?

ROBERT. No, Sir; I meant to draw his attention to it in the morning.

INSPECTOR. Very good.

ROBERT. Yes, Sir. [He goes again.]

INSPECTOR. [Looking at DE LEVIS] Well, sir, there's your story corroborated.

DE LEVIS. [Stifly] I don't know why it should need corroboration, Inspector.

INSPECTOR. In my experience, you can never have too much of that. [To WINSOR] I understand there's a lady in the room on this side [pointing Left] and a gentleman on this [pointing Right] Were they in their rooms?

WINSOR. Miss Orme was; Captain Dancy not.

INSPECTOR. Do they know of the affair?

WINSOR. Yes.

INSPECTOR. Well, I'd just like the keys of their doors for a minute. My man will get them.

He goes to the door, opens it, and speaks to a constable in the corridor.

[To TREISURE] You can go with him.

TREISURE goes Out.

In the meantime I'll just examine the balcony.

He goes out on the balcony, followed by DE LEVIS.

WINSOR. [To CANYNGE] Damn De Levis and his money! It's deuced invidious, all this, General.

CANYNGE. The Inspector's no earthly.

There is a simultaneous re-entry of the INSPECTOR from the balcony and of TREISURE and the CONSTABLE from the corridor.

CONSTABLE. [Handing key] Room on the left, Sir. [Handing key] Room on the right, sir.

The INSPECTOR tries the keys in the door, watched with tension by the others. The keys fail.

INSPECTOR. Put them back.

Hands keys to CONSTABLE, who goes out, followed by TREISURE.

I'll have to try every key in the house, sir.

WINSOR. Inspector, do you really think it necessary to disturb the whole house and knock up all my guests? It's most disagreeable, all this, you know. The loss of the money is not such a great matter. Mr De Levis has a very large income.

CANYNGE. You could get the numbers of the notes from Kentman the bookmaker, Inspector; he'll probably have the big ones, anyway.

INSPECTOR. [Shaking his head] A bookie. I don't suppose he will, sir. It's come and go with them, all the time.

WINSOR. We don't want a Meldon Court scandal, Inspector.

INSPECTOR. Well, Mr WINSOR, I've formed my theory.

As he speaks, DE LEVIS comes in from the balcony.

And I don't say to try the keys is necessary to it; but strictly, I ought to exhaust the possibilities.

WINSOR. What do you say, De Levis? D'you want everybody in the house knocked up so that their keys can be tried?

DE LEVIS. [Whose face, since his return, expresses a curious excitement] No, I don't.

INSPECTOR. Very well, gentlemen. In my opinion the thief walked in before the door was locked, probably during dinner; and was under the bed. He escaped by dropping from the balcony--the creeper at that corner

[he points stage Left] has been violently wrenched. I'll go down now, and examine the grounds, and I'll see you again Sir. [He makes another entry in his note-book] Goodnight, then, gentlemen!

CANYNGE. Good-night!

WINSOR. [With relief] I'll come with you, Inspector.

He escorts him to the door, and they go out.

DE LEVIS. [Suddenly] General, I know who took them.

CANYNGE. The deuce you do! Are you following the Inspector's theory?

DE LEVIS. [Contemptuously] That ass! [Pulling the shaving papers out of the case] No! The man who put those there was clever and cool enough to wrench that creeper off the balcony, as a blind. Come and look here, General. [He goes to the window; the GENERAL follows. DE LEVIS points stage Right] See the rail of my balcony, and the rail of the next? [He holds up the cord of his dressing-gown, stretching his arms out] I've measured it with this. Just over seven feet, that's all! If a man can take a standing jump on to a narrow bookcase four feet high and balance there, he'd make nothing of that. And, look here! [He goes out on the balcony and returns with a bit of broken creeper in his hand, and holds it out into the light] Someone's stood on that--the stalk's crushed--the inner corner too, where he'd naturally stand when he took his jump back.

CANYNGE. [After examining it--stiffly] That other balcony is young Dancy's, Mr De Levis; a soldier and a gentleman. This is an extraordinary insinuation.

DE LEVIS. Accusation.

CANYNGE. What!

DE LEVIS. I have intuitions, General; it's in my blood. I see the whole thing. Dancy came up, watched me into the bathroom, tried my door, slipped back into his dressing-room, saw my window was open, took that jump, sneaked the notes, filled the case up with these, wrenched the creeper there [He points stage Left] for a blind, jumped back, and slipped downstairs again. It didn't take him four minutes altogether.

CANYNGE. [Very gravely] This is outrageous, De Levis. Dancy says he was downstairs all the time. You must either withdraw unreservedly,

or I must confront you with him.

DE LEVIS. If he'll return the notes and apologise, I'll do nothing--except cut him in future. He gave me that filly, you know, as a hopeless weed, and he's been pretty sick ever since, that he was such a flat as not to see how good she was. Besides, he's hard up, I know.

CANYNGE. [After a vexed turn up and down the room] It's mad, sir, to jump to conclusions like this.

DE LEVIS. Not so mad as the conclusion Dancy jumped to when he lighted on my balcony.

CANYNGE. Nobody could have taken this money who did not know you had it.

DE LEVIS. How do you know that he didn't?

CANYNGE. Do you know that he did?

DE LEVIS. I haven't the least doubt of it.

CANYNGE. Without any proof. This is very ugly, De Levis. I must tell WINSOR.

DE LEVIS. [Angrily] Tell the whole blooming lot. You think I've no feelers, but I've felt the atmosphere here, I can tell you, General. If I were in Dancy's shoes and he in mine, your tone to me would be very different.

CANYNGE. [Suavely frigid] I'm not aware of using any tone, as you call it. But this is a private house, Mr De Levis, and something is due to our host and to the esprit de corps that exists among gentlemen.

DE LEVIS. Since when is a thief a gentleman? Thick as thieves--a good motto, isn't it?

CANYNGE. That's enough! [He goes to the door, but stops before opening it] Now, look here! I have some knowledge of the world. Once an accusation like this passes beyond these walls no one can foresee the consequences. Captain Dancy is a gallant fellow, with a fine record as a soldier; and only just married. If he's as innocent as--Christ--mud will stick to him, unless the real thief is found. In the old days of swords, either you or he would not have gone out of this room alive. It you persist in this absurd accusation, you will both of you go out of this

room dead in the eyes of Society: you for bringing it, he for being the object of it.

DE LEVIS. Society! Do you think I don't know that I'm only tolerated for my money? Society can't add injury to insult and have my money as well, that's all. If the notes are restored I'll keep my mouth shut; if they're not, I shan't. I'm certain I'm right. I ask nothing better than to be confronted with Dancy; but, if you prefer it, deal with him in your own way--for the sake of your esprit de corps.

CANYNGE. 'Pon my soul, Mr De Levis, you go too far.

DE LEVIS. Not so far as I shall go, General Canynge, if those notes aren't given back.

WINSOR comes in.

WINSOR. Well, De Levis, I'm afraid that's all we can do for the present. So very sorry this should have happened in my house.

CANYNGE. [Alter a silence] There's a development, WINSOR. Mr De Levis accuses one of your guests.

WINSOR. What?

CANYNGE. Of jumping from his balcony to this, taking the notes, and jumping back. I've done my best to dissuade him from indulging the fancy--without success. Dancy must be told.

DE LEVIS. You can deal with Dancy in your own way. All I want is the money back.

CANYNGE. [Drily] Mr De Levis feels that he is only valued for his money, so that it is essential for him to have it back.

WINSOR. Damn it! This is monstrous, De Levis. I've known Ronald Dancy since he was a boy.

CANYNGE. You talk about adding injury to insult, De Levis. What do you call such treatment of a man who gave you the mare out of which you made this thousand pounds?

DE LEVIS. I didn't want the mare; I took her as a favour.

CANYNGE. With an eye to possibilities, I venture to think--the principle guides a good many transactions.

DE LEVIS. [As if flicked on a raw spot] In my race, do you mean?

CANYNGE. [Coldly] I said nothing of the sort.

DE LEVIS. No; you don't say these things, any of you.

CANYNGE. Nor did I think it.

DE LEVIS. Dancy does.

WINSOR. Really, De Levis, if this is the way you repay hospitality--

DE LEVIS. Hospitality that skins my feelings and costs me a thousand pounds!

CANYNGE. Go and get Dancy, WINSOR; but don't say anything to him.

WINSOR goes out.

CANYNGE. Perhaps you will kindly control yourself, and leave this to me.

DE LEVIS turns to the window and lights a cigarette. WINSOR comes back, followed by DANCY.

CANYNGE. For WINSOR's sake, Dancy, we don't want any scandal or fuss about this affair. We've tried to make the police understand that. To my mind the whole thing turns on our finding who knew that De Levis had this money. It's about that we want to consult you.

WINSOR. Kentman paid De Levis round the corner in the further paddock, he says.

DE LEVIS turns round from the window, so that he and DANCY are staring at each other.

CANYNGE. Did you hear anything that throws light, Dancy? As it was your filly originally, we thought perhaps you might.

DANCY. I? No.

CANYNGE. Didn't hear of the sale on the course at all?

DANCY. No.

CANYNGE. Then you can't suggest any one who could have known? Nothing else was taken, you see.

DANCY. De Levis is known to be rolling, as I am known to be stony.

CANYNGE. There are a good many people still rolling, besides Mr De Levis, but not many people with so large a sum in their pocket-books.

DANCY. He won two races.

DE LEVIS. Do you suggest that I bet in ready money?

DANCY. I don't know how you bet, and I don't care.

CANYNGE. You can't help us, then?

DANCY. No. I can't. Anything else? [He looks fixedly at DE LEVIS].

CANYNGE. [Putting his hand on DANCY's arm] Nothing else, thank you, Dancy.

DANCY goes. CANYNGE puts his hand up to his face. A moment's silence.

WINSOR. You see, De Levis? He didn't even know you'd got the money.

DE LEVIS. Very conclusive.

WINSOR. Well! You are--!

There is a knock on the door, and the INSPECTOR enters.

INSPECTOR. I'm just going, gentlemen. The grounds, I'm sorry to say, have yielded nothing. It's a bit of a puzzle.

CANYNGE. You've searched thoroughly?

INSPECTOR. We have, General. I can pick up nothing near the terrace.

WINSOR. [After a look at DE LEVIS, whose face expresses too much] H'm! You'll take it up from the other end, then, Inspector?

INSPECTOR. Well, we'll see what we can do with the bookmakers about the numbers, sir. Before I go, gentlemen--you've had time to think it over--there's no one you suspect in the house, I suppose?

DE LEVIS's face is alive and uncertain. CANYNGE is staring at him very fixedly.

WINSOR. [Emphatically] No.

DE LEVIS turns and goes out on to the balcony.

INSPECTOR. If you're coming in to the racing to-morrow, sir, you might give us a call. I'll have seen Kentman by then.

WINSOR. Right you are, Inspector. Good night, and many thanks.

INSPECTOR. You're welcome, sir. [He goes out.]

WINSOR. Gosh! I thought that chap [With a nod towards the balcony] was going to--! Look here, General, we must stop his tongue. Imagine it going the rounds. They may never find the real thief, you know. It's the very devil for Dancy.

CANYNGE. WINSOR! Dancy's sleeve was damp.

WINSOR. How d'you mean?

CANYNGE. Quite damp. It's been raining.

The two look at each other.

WINSOR. I--I don't follow-- [His voice is hesitative and lower, showing that he does].

CANYNGE. It was coming down hard; a minute out in it would have been enough--[He motions with his chin towards the balcony].

WINSOR. [Hastily] He must have been out on his balcony since.

CANYNGE. It stopped before I came up, half an hour ago.

WINSOR. He's been leaning on the wet stone, then.

CANYNGE. With the outside of the upper part of the arm?

WINSOR. Against the wall, perhaps. There may be a dozen explanations. [Very low and with great concentration] I entirely and absolutely refuse to believe anything of the sort against Ronald Dancy in my house. Dash it, General, we must do as we'd be done by. It hits us all--it hits us all. The thing's intolerable.

CANYNGE. I agree. Intolerable. [Raising his voice] Mr De Levis!

DE LEVIS returns into view, in the centre of the open window.

CANYNGE. [With cold decision] Young Dancy was an officer and is a gentleman; this insinuation is pure supposition, and you must not make it. Do you understand me?

DE LEVIS. My tongue is still mine, General, if my money isn't!

CANYNGE. [Unmoved] Must not. You're a member of three Clubs, you want to be member of a fourth. No one who makes such an insinuation against a fellow-guest in a country house, except on absolute proof, can do so without complete ostracism. Have we your word to say nothing?

DE LEVIS. Social blackmail? H'm!

CANYNGE. Not at all--simple warning. If you consider it necessary in your interests to start this scandal-no matter how, we shall consider it necessary in ours to dissociate ourselves completely from one who so recklessly disregards the unwritten code.

DE LEVIS. Do you think your code applies to me? Do you, General?

CANYNGE. To anyone who aspires to be a gentleman, Sir.

DE LEVIS. Ah! But you haven't known me since I was a boy.

CANYNGE. Make up your mind.

A pause.

DE LEVIS. I'm not a fool, General. I know perfectly well that you can get me outed.

CANYNGE. [Icily] Well?

DE LEVIS. [Sullenly] I'll say nothing about it, unless I get more proof.

CANYNGE. Good! We have implicit faith in Dancy.

There is a moment's encounter of eyes; the GENERAL'S steady, shrewd, impassive; WINSOR'S angry and defiant; DE LEVIS's mocking, a little triumphant, malicious. Then CANYNGE and WINSOR go to the door, and pass out.

DE LEVIS. [To himself] Rats!

CURTAIN

ACT II

SCENE I

Afternoon, three weeks later, in the card room of a London Club. A fire is burning, Left. A door, Right, leads to the billiard-room. Rather Left of Centre, at a card table, LORD ST ERTH, an old John Bull, sits facing the audience; to his right is GENERAL CANYNGE, to his left AUGUSTUS BORRING, an essential Clubman, about thirty-five years old, with a very slight and rather becoming stammer or click in his speech. The fourth Bridge player, CHARLES WINSOR, stands with his back to the fire.

BORRING. And the r-rub.

WINSOR. By George! You do hold cards, Borring.

ST ERTH. [Who has lost] Not a patch on the old whist--this game. Don't know why I play it--never did.

CANYNGE. St Erth, shall we raise the flag for whist again?

WINSOR. No go, General. You can't go back on pace. No getting a man to walk when he knows he can fly. The young men won't look at it.

BORRING. Better develop it so that t-two can sit out, General.

ST ERTH. We ought to have stuck to the old game. Wish I'd gone to Newmarket, Canynge, in spite of the weather.

CANYNGE. [Looking at his watch] Let's hear what's won the Cambridgeshire. Ring, won't you, WINSOR? [WINSOR rings.]

ST ERTH. By the way, Canynge, young De Levis was blackballed.

CANYNGE. What!

ST ERTH. I looked in on my way down.

CANYNGE sits very still, and WINSOR utters a disturbed sound.

BORRING. But of c-course he was, General. What did you expect?

A FOOTMAN enters.

FOOTMAN. Yes, my lord?

ST ERTH. What won the Cambridgeshire?

FOOTMAN. Rosemary, my lord. Sherbet second; Barbizon third. Nine to one the winner.

WINSOR. Thank you. That's all.

FOOTMAN goes.

BORRING. Rosemary! And De Levis sold her! But he got a good p-price, I suppose.

The other three look at him.

ST ERTH. Many a slip between price and pocket, young man.

CANYNGE. Cut! [They cut].

BORRING. I say, is that the yarn that's going round about his having had a lot of m-money stolen in a country house? By Jove! He'll be pretty s-sick.

WINSOR. You and I, Borring.

He sits down in CANYNGE'S chair, and the GENERAL takes his place by the fire.

BORRING. Phew! Won't Dancy be mad! He gave that filly away to save her keep. He was rather pleased to find somebody who'd take her. Bentman must have won a p-pot. She was at thirty-threes a fortnight ago.

ST ERTH. All the money goes to fellows who don't know a horse from a haystack.

CANYNGE. [Profoundly] And care less. Yes! We want men racing to whom a horse means something.

BORRING. I thought the horse m-meant the same to everyone, General--chance to get the b-better of one's neighbour.

CANYNGE. [With feeling] The horse is a noble animal, sir, as you'd know if you'd owed your life to them as often as I have.

BORRING. They always try to take mine, General. I shall never belong to the noble f-fellowship of the horse.

ST ERTH. [Drily] Evidently. Deal!

As BORRING begins to deal the door is opened and MAJOR COLFORD appears--a lean and moustached cavalryman.

BORRING. Hallo, C-Colford.

COLFORD. General!

Something in the tone of his voice brings them all to a standstill.

COLFORD. I want your advice. Young De Levis in there [He points to the billiard-room from which he has just come] has started a blasphemous story--

CANYNGE. One moment. Mr Borring, d'you mind--

COLFORD. It makes no odds, General. Four of us in there heard him. He's saying it was Ronald Dancy robbed him down at WINSOR's. The fellow's mad over losing the price of that filly now she's won the

Cambridgeshire.

BORRING. [All ears] Dancy! Great S-Scott!

COLFORD. Dancy's in the Club. If he hadn't been I'd have taken it on myself to wring the bounder's neck.

WINSOR and BORRING have risen. ST ERTH alone remains seated.

CANYNGE. [After consulting ST ERTH with a look] Ask De Levis to be good enough to come in here. Borring, you might see that Dancy doesn't leave the Club. We shall want him. Don't say anything to him, and use your tact to keep people off.

BORRING goes out, followed by COLFORD. WINSOR. Result of hearing he was black-balled--pretty slippy.

CANYNGE. St Erth, I told you there was good reason when I asked you to back young De Levis. WINSOR and I knew of this insinuation; I wanted to keep his tongue quiet. It's just wild assertion; to have it bandied about was unfair to Dancy. The duel used to keep people's tongues in order.

ST ERTH. H'm! It never settled anything, except who could shoot straightest.

COLFORD. [Re-appearing] De Levis says he's nothing to add to what he said to you before, on the subject.

CANYNGE. Kindly tell him that if he wishes to remain a member of this Club he must account to the Committee for such a charge against a fellow-member. Four of us are here, and form a quorum.

COLFORD goes out again.

ST ERTH. Did Kentman ever give the police the numbers of those notes, WINSOR?

WINSOR. He only had the numbers of two--the hundred, and one of the fifties.

ST ERTH. And they haven't traced 'em?

WINSOR. Not yet.

As he speaks, DE LEVIS comes in. He is in a highly-coloured, not to say excited state. COLFORD follows him.

DE LEVIS. Well, General Canynge! It's a little too strong all this--a little too strong. [Under emotion his voice is slightly more exotic].

CANYNGE. [Calmly] It is obvious, Mr De Levis, that you and Captain Dancy can't both remain members of this Club. We ask you for an explanation before requesting one resignation or the other.

DE LEVIS. You've let me down.

CANYNGE. What!

DE LEVIS. Well, I shall tell people that you and Lord St Erth backed me up for one Club, and asked me to resign from another.

CANYNGE. It's a matter of indifference to me, sir, what you tell people.

ST ERTH. [Drily] You seem a venomous young man.

DE LEVIS. I'll tell you what seems to me venomous, my lord--chasing a man like a pack of hounds because he isn't your breed.

CANYNGE. You appear to have your breed on the brain, sir. Nobody else does, so far as I know.

DE LEVIS. Suppose I had robbed Dancy, would you chase him out for complaining of it?

COLFORD. My God! If you repeat that--

CANYNGE. Steady, Colford!

WINSOR. You make this accusation that Dancy stole your money in my house on no proof--no proof; and you expect Dancy's friends to treat you as if you were a gentleman! That's too strong, if you like!

DE LEVIS. No proof? Bentman told me at Newmarket yesterday that Dancy did know of the sale. He told Goole, and Goole says that he himself spoke of it to Dancy.

WINSOR. Well--if he did?

DE LEVIS. Dancy told you he didn't know of it in General Canynge's presence, and mine. [To CANYNGE] You can't deny that, if you want to.

CANYNGE. Choose your expressions more nicely, please!

DE LEVIS. Proof! Did they find any footmarks in the grounds below that torn creeper? Not a sign! You saw how he can jump; he won ten pounds from me that same evening betting on what he knew was a certainty. That's your Dancy--a common sharper!

CANYNGE. [Nodding towards the billiard-room] Are those fellows still in there, Colford?

COLFORD. Yes.

CANYNGE. Then bring Dancy up, will you? But don't say anything to him.

COLFORD. [To DE LEVIS] You may think yourself damned lucky if he doesn't break your neck.

He goes out. The three who are left with DE LEVIS avert their eyes from him.

DE LEVIS. [Smouldering] I have a memory, and a sting too. Yes, my lord--since you are good enough to call me venomous. [To CANYNGE] I quite understand--I'm marked for Coventry now, whatever happens. Well, I'll take Dancy with me.

ST ERTH. [To himself] This Club has always had a decent, quiet name.

WINSOR. Are you going to retract, and apologise in front of Dancy and the members who heard you?

DE LEVIS. No fear!

ST ERTH. You must be a very rich man, sir. A jury is likely to take the view that money can hardly compensate for an accusation of that sort.

DE LEVIS stands silent. CANYNGE. Courts of law require proof.

ST ERTH. He can make it a criminal action.

WINSOR. Unless you stop this at once, you may find yourself in prison.

If you can stop it, that is.

ST ERTH. If I were young Dancy, nothing should induce me.

DE LEVIS. But you didn't steal my money, Lord St Erth.

ST ERTH. You're deuced positive, sir. So far as I could understand it, there were a dozen ways you could have been robbed. It seems to me you value other men's reputations very lightly.

DE LEVIS. Confront me with Dancy and give me fair play.

WINSOR. [Aside to CANYNGE] Is it fair to Dancy not to let him know?

CANYNGE. Our duty is to the Club now, WINSOR. We must have this cleared up.

COLFORD comes in, followed by BORRING and DANCY.

ST ERTH. Captain Dancy, a serious accusation has been made against you by this gentleman in the presence of several members of the Club.

DANCY. What is it?

ST ERTH. That you robbed him of that money at WINSOR's.

DANCY. [Hard and tense] Indeed! On what grounds is he good enough to say that?

DE LEVIS. [Tense too] You gave me that filly to save yourself her keep, and you've been mad about it ever since; you knew from Goole that I had sold her to Kentman and been paid in cash, yet I heard you myself deny that you knew it. You had the next room to me, and you can jump like a cat, as we saw that evening; I found some creepers crushed by a weight on my balcony on that side. When I went to the bath your door was open, and when I came back it was shut.

CANYNGE. That's the first we have heard about the door.

DE LEVIS. I remembered it afterwards.

ST ERTH. Well, Dancy?

DANCY. [With intense deliberation] I'll settle this matter with any

weapons, when and where he likes.

ST ERTH. [Drily] It can't be settled that way--you know very well. You must take it to the Courts, unless he retracts.

DANCY. Will you retract?

DE LEVIS. Why did you tell General Canynge you didn't know Kentman had paid me in cash?

DANCY. Because I didn't.

DE LEVIS. Then Kentman and Goole lied--for no reason?

DANCY. That's nothing to do with me.

DE LEVIS. If you were downstairs all the time, as you say, why was your door first open and then shut?

DANCY. Being downstairs, how should I know? The wind, probably.

DE LEVIS. I should like to hear what your wife says about it.

DANCY. Leave my wife alone, you damned Jew!

ST ERTH. Captain Dancy!

DE LEVIS. [White with rage] Thief!

DANCY. Will you fight?

DE LEVIS. You're very smart-dead men tell no tales. No! Bring your action, and we shall see.

DANCY takes a step towards him, but CANYNGE and WINSOR interpose.

ST ERTH. That'll do, Mr De Levis; we won't keep you. [He looks round] Kindly consider your membership suspended till this matter has been threshed out.

DE LEVIS. [Tremulous with anger] Don't trouble yourselves about my membership. I resign it. [To DANCY] You called me a damned Jew. My race was old when you were all savages. I am proud to be a Jew. Au revoir, in the Courts.

He goes out, and silence follows his departure.

ST ERTH. Well, Captain Dancy?

DANCY. If the brute won't fight, what am I to do, sir?

ST ERTH. We've told you--take action, to clear your name.

DANCY. Colford, you saw me in the hall writing letters after our game.

COLFORD. Certainly I did; you were there when I went to the smoking-room.

CANYNGE. How long after you left the billiard-room?

COLFORD. About five minutes.

DANCY. It's impossible for me to prove that I was there all the time.

CANYNGE. It's for De Levis to prove what he asserts. You heard what he said about Goole?

DANCY. If he told me, I didn't take it in.

ST ERTH. This concerns the honour of the Club. Are you going to take action?

DANCY. [Slowly] That is a very expensive business, Lord St Erth, and I'm hard up. I must think it over. [He looks round from face to face] Am I to take it that there is a doubt in your minds, gentlemen?

COLFORD. [Emphatically] No.

CANYNGE. That's not the question, Dancy. This accusation was overheard by various members, and we represent the Club. If you don't take action, judgment will naturally go by default.

DANCY. I might prefer to look on the whole thing as beneath contempt.

He turns and goes out. When he is gone there is an even longer silence than after DE LEVIS's departure.

ST ERTH. [Abruptly] I don't like it.

WINSOR. I've known him all his life.

COLFORD. You may have my head if he did it, Lord St Erth. He and I have been in too many holes together. By Gad! My toe itches for that fellow's butt end.

BORRING. I'm sorry; but has he t-taken it in quite the right way? I should have thought--hearing it s-suddenly--

COLFORD. Bosh!

WINSOR. It's perfectly damnable for him.

ST ERTH. More damnable if he did it, WINSOR.

BORRING. The Courts are b-beastly distrustful, don't you know.

COLFORD. His word's good enough for me.

CANYNGE. We're as anxious to believe Dancy as you, Colford, for the honour of the Army and the Club.

WINSOR. Of course, he'll bring a case, when he's thought it over.

ST ERTH. What are we to do in the meantime?

COLFORD. If Dancy's asked to resign, you may take my resignation too.

BORRING. I thought his wanting to f-fight him a bit screeny.

COLFORD. Wouldn't you have wanted a shot at the brute? A law court? Pah!

WINSOR. Yes. What'll be his position even if he wins?

BORRING. Damages, and a stain on his c-character.

WINSOR. Quite so, unless they find the real thief. People always believe the worst.

COLFORD. [Glaring at BORRING] They do.

CANYNGE. There is no decent way out of a thing of this sort.

ST ERTH. No. [Rising] It leaves a bad taste. I'm sorry for young Mrs Dancy--poor woman!

BORRING. Are you going to play any more?

ST ERTH. [Abruptly] No, sir. Good night to you. Canynge, can I give you a lift?

He goes out, followed by CANYNGE. BORRING.

[After a slight pause] Well, I shall go and take the t-temperature of the Club.

He goes out.

COLFORD. Damn that effeminate stammering chap! What can we do for Dancy, WINSOR?

WINSOR. Colford! [A slight pause] The General felt his coat sleeve that night, and it was wet.

COLFORD. Well! What proof's that? No, by George! An old school-fellow, a brother officer, and a pal.

WINSOR. If he did do it--

COLFORD. He didn't. But if he did, I'd stick to him, and see him through it, if I could.
WINSOR walks over to the fire, stares into it, turns round and stares at COLFORD, who is standing motionless.
COLFORD. Yes, by God!
CURTAIN.
SCENE II
[NOTE.--This should be a small set capable of being set quickly within that of the previous scene.]
Morning of the following day. The DANCYS' flat. In the sitting-room of this small abode MABEL DANCY and MARGARET ORME are sitting full face to the audience, on a couch in the centre of the room, in front of the imaginary window. There is a fireplace, Left, with fire burning; a door below it, Left; and a door on the Right, facing the audience, leads to a corridor and the outer door of the flat, which is visible. Their voices are heard in rapid exchange; then as the curtain rises, so does MABEL.

MABEL. But it's monstrous!
MARGARET. Of course! [She lights a cigarette and hands the case to MABEL, who, however, sees nothing but her own thoughts] De Levis might just as well have pitched on me, except that I can't jump more than six inches in these skirts.
MABEL. It's wicked! Yesterday afternoon at the Club, did you say? Ronny hasn't said a word to me. Why?
MARGARET. [With a long puff of smoke] Doesn't want you bothered.
MABEL. But----Good heavens!----Me!
MARGARET. Haven't you found out, Mabel, that he isn't exactly communicative? No desperate character is.
MABEL. Ronny?
MARGARET. Gracious! Wives are at a disadvantage, especially early on. You've never hunted with him, my dear. I have. He takes more sudden decisions than any man I ever knew. He's taking one now, I'll bet.
MABEL. That beast, De Levis! I was in our room next door all the time.
MARGARET. Was the door into Ronny's dressing-room open?
MABEL. I don't know; I--I think it was.
MARGARET. Well, you can say so in Court any way. Not that it matters. Wives are liars by law.
MABEL. [Staring down at her] What do you mean--Court?
MARGARET. My dear, he'll have to bring an action for defamation of character, or whatever they call it.
MABEL. Were they talking of this last night at the WINSOR's?
MARGARET. Well, you know a dinner-table, Mabel--Scandal is heaven-sent at this time of year.
MABEL. It's terrible, such a thing--terrible!
MARGARET. [Gloomily] If only Ronny weren't known to be so broke.
MABEL. [With her hands to her forehead] I can't realise--I simply can't. If there's a case would it be all right afterwards?
MARGARET. Do you remember St Offert--cards? No, you wouldn't--you were in high frocks. Well, St Offert got damages, but he also got the hoof, underneath. He lives in Ireland. There isn't the slightest connection, so far as I can see, Mabel, between innocence and reputation. Look at me!
MABEL. We'll fight it tooth and nail!
MARGARET. Mabel, you're pure wool, right through; everybody's sorry for you.
MABEL. It's for him they ought--
MARGARET. [Again handing the cigarette case] Do smoke, old thing.
MABEL takes a cigarette this time, but does not light it.
It isn't altogether simple. General Canynge was there last night. You don't mind my being beastly frank, do you?
MABEL. No. I want it.

MARGARET. Well, he's all for esprit de corps and that. But he was awfully silent.
MABEL. I hate half-hearted friends. Loyalty comes before everything.
MARGARET. Ye-es; but loyalties cut up against each other sometimes, you know.
MABEL. I must see Ronny. D'you mind if I go and try to get him on the telephone?
MARGARET. Rather not.
MABEL goes out by the door Left.
Poor kid!
She curls herself into a corner of the sofa, as if trying to get away from life. The bell rings. MARGARET stirs, gets up, and goes out into the corridor, where she opens the door to LADY ADELA WINSOR, whom she precedes into the sitting-room.
Enter the second murderer! D'you know that child knew nothing?
LADY A. Where is she?
MARGARET. Telephoning. Adela, if there's going to be an action, we shall be witnesses. I shall wear black georgette with an ecru hat. Have you ever given evidence?
LADY A. Never.
MARGARET. It must be too frightfully thrilling.
LADY A. Oh! Why did I ever ask that wretch De Levis? I used to think him pathetic. Meg did you know----Ronald Dancy's coat was wet? The General happened to feel it.
MARGARET. So that's why he was so silent.
LADY A. Yes; and after the scene in the Club yesterday he went to see those bookmakers, and Goole--what a name!--is sure he told Dancy about the sale.
MARGARET. [Suddenly] I don't care. He's my third cousin. Don't you feel you couldn't, Adela?
LADY A. Couldn't--what?
MARGARET. Stand for De Levis against one of ourselves?
LADY A. That's very narrow, Meg.
MARGARET. Oh! I know lots of splendid Jews, and I rather liked little Ferdy; but when it comes to the point--! They all stick together; why shouldn't we? It's in the blood. Open your jugular, and see if you haven't got it.
LADY A. My dear, my great grandmother was a Jewess. I'm very proud of her.
MARGARET. Inoculated. [Stretching herself] Prejudices, Adela--or are they loyalties--I don't know--cris-cross--we all cut each other's throats from the best of motives.
LADY A. Oh! I shall remember that. Delightful! [Holding up a finger] You got it from Bergson, Meg. Isn't he wonderful?

MARGARET. Yes; have you ever read him?
LADY A. Well--No. [Looking at the bedroom door] That poor child! I quite agree. I shall tell every body it's ridiculous. You don't really think Ronald Dancy--?
MARGARET. I don't know, Adela. There are people who simply can't live without danger. I'm rather like that myself. They're all right when they're getting the D.S.O. or shooting man-eaters; but if there's no excitement going, they'll make it--out of sheer craving. I've seen Ronny Dancy do the maddest things for no mortal reason except the risk. He's had a past, you know.
LADY A. Oh! Do tell!
MARGARET. He did splendidly in the war, of course, because it suited him; but--just before--don't you remember--a very queer bit of riding?
LADY A. No.
MARGARET. Most dare-devil thing--but not quite. You must remember--it was awfully talked about. And then, of course, right up to his marriage--[She lights a cigarette.]
LADY A. Meg, you're very tantalising!

10.5 SUMMARY OF LOYALTIES

The play takes place in a **London drawing room** where a group of wealthy friends and acquaintances gather. The central characters are **Lady Mabel Eden**, her husband **Sir George Eden**, and their circle of friends, which includes **Colonel Sir Robert Slade**, **Maxwell, a financier**, and **Maurice, a young artist**. The plot revolves around a scandal that threatens to disrupt the carefully maintained social decorum of these upper-class individuals.

The story begins with the revelation that **Maurice**, a young man with a noble yet flawed character, has been accused of **embezzling money** from a wealthy family. Lady Mabel, who has always been a strong believer in loyalty and integrity, finds herself torn between her loyalty to Maurice, whom she has known for years, and her duty to uphold the moral standards of her social class. She becomes a key figure in trying to protect him, despite growing suspicions among the others in the group.

As the investigation into Maurice's actions unfolds, the characters' personal loyalties and values are tested. The situation grows more complicated when it is revealed that **Maxwell**, the financier, may have played a role in the financial scandal but is using his power and influence to manipulate the situation in his favor. Maxwell's betrayal of his friends adds another layer of tension to the plot.

The themes of **betrayal, guilt, and honor** are explored throughout the play, as each character grapples with their own sense of loyalty, both to their friends and to their social class. Ultimately, Maurice's fate is determined by the actions and decisions of those around him, and the play ends with the characters facing the consequences of their moral choices.

Themes:

- **Loyalty and Betrayal**: The central theme of the play is the examination of loyalty, both personal and social. The characters must decide where their loyalties lie—whether they will stay loyal to their friends or conform to societal expectations and moral standards.
- **Social Class and Morality**: Galsworthy explores how the values and behaviors of the upper class often conflict with personal morality. The play questions whether loyalty and integrity can truly coexist in a world where status and wealth often dictate behavior.
- **Guilt and Responsibility**: The play delves into the idea of personal responsibility and the guilt that accompanies betrayal. The characters are forced to confront their own actions and their implications for those around them.

"Loyalties" is a compelling drama that critiques the moral codes and social expectations of the time. Through its nuanced portrayal of complex characters and their entangled relationships, Galsworthy raises questions about human behavior, ethics, and the consequences of choices made in the name of loyalty.

10.6 LET US SUM UP

Loyalties by John Galsworthy is a thought-provoking drama that examines themes of personal integrity, social loyalty, and the moral dilemmas faced by individuals within the constraints of society and class expectations. Set in the early 20th century, the play revolves around a group of upper-class individuals whose lives become intertwined in a controversy involving theft, trust, and honor.

The central plot of the play begins with an accusation of theft against a man named Winton, who is a close friend of the other characters. Winton, a man of high social standing, is accused of stealing money from a friend's safe, and this accusation tests the boundaries of loyalty within the group. The characters' responses to this accusation reveal their inner conflicts and the varying degrees to which they are willing to defend their own moral beliefs, relationships, and social positions.

Key characters in Loyalties include:

- **Sir John Loxley**, a prominent figure, who represents the social elite and is a key figure in navigating the moral challenges in the play.
- **Winton**, the accused man, whose character is central to the unfolding drama and who represents the notion of loyalty tested by personal honor.
- **Mrs. Loxley**, a character who is torn between her loyalty to her husband and her growing doubts about the situation.

The tension arises as the characters must grapple with questions of truth, honor, and what it means to be loyal. The play explores the complexity of loyalty, particularly when it is in conflict with one's sense of justice. As the situation develops, the audience is forced to confront

the idea that loyalty, especially within a close-knit social group, can be both a virtue and a burden.

Ultimately, Loyalties is a critique of social norms and the way that loyalty can be manipulated to justify actions that may not be morally right. The characters are caught in a web of personal and social obligations, and their decisions reflect the human struggle between integrity and the pressures of societal expectations.

Through Loyalties, Galsworthy critiques the moral ambiguity of the upper classes, examining how loyalty to friends or family can sometimes lead to moral compromises or conceal the truth. The play ultimately underscores the difficulty of making ethical choices when personal and social loyalties collide.

Key Themes in the Play:

1. **Loyalty vs. Truth:** The central moral dilemma of the play revolves around the tension between loyalty to friends and the pursuit of truth and justice.
2. **Social Class and Integrity:** The play critiques the upper-class society and how social status influences loyalty, relationships, and moral decisions.
3. **Moral Conflict and Consequences:** Galsworthy examines how personal integrity and societal pressures can result in difficult choices that have profound consequences on relationships.
4. **The Price of Loyalty:** Loyalty, while often viewed as a virtue, is shown to have a dark side in the play, as it can lead to personal and social compromise.

In conclusion, Loyalties presents a deep exploration of the complexities of human relationships and the ethical challenges individuals face when personal and social loyalties are tested.

10.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objective:

Students will analyze the themes, characters, and moral dilemmas in Loyalties by John Galsworthy, focusing on loyalty, integrity, social expectations, and moral conflict. Through discussion and creative activities, students will deepen their understanding of the play's central conflicts and how they relate to real-world issues.

Lesson Plan:

1. **Introduction to the Play (15-20 minutes):**
    - Begin by discussing the background of Loyalties and its central themes. Explain how the play explores the concept of loyalty and how it intersects with social expectations, personal integrity, and moral dilemmas.
    - Briefly introduce the characters and the main plot: The play centers around an accusation of theft that tests the loyalty of friends and family within an upper-class social circle.
2. **Theme Exploration (20 minutes):**

- Discuss the major themes of the play, using specific examples from the text:
  - **Loyalty vs. Truth:** How do characters like Sir John Loxley and Winton navigate the conflict between loyalty to friends and the truth?
  - **Social Class and Integrity:** How does the play critique the upper-class society in terms of its views on loyalty, morality, and justice?
  - **Moral Dilemmas:** Discuss how the play presents moral choices and the consequences of those choices.
- Encourage students to think about how these themes are relevant in today's society. How do we see similar issues of loyalty, social expectations, and moral decisions in contemporary culture?

3. **Character Study (20 minutes):**
   - Divide students into small groups and assign each group a character from Loyalties (e.g., Sir John Loxley, Winton, Mrs. Loxley, etc.).
   - Ask each group to analyze their character's actions, motivations, and conflicts in the play. What is their role in the central moral dilemma? How do their personal values and social position influence their decisions?
   - After the group discussions, have each group share their findings with the class.
4. **Class Discussion (20 minutes):**
   - Lead a full class discussion on the following questions:
     - **Is loyalty always a virtue?** Can loyalty ever be harmful? Provide examples from the play where loyalty leads to complications or negative consequences.
     - **What does Loyalties say about the relationship between truth and loyalty?** How do the characters' commitments to loyalty challenge their ability to discern the truth?
     - **How do societal pressures shape the characters' decisions?** Discuss how class and social standing influence the characters' loyalty and moral choices.
   - Encourage students to connect these themes to their own lives and current events, considering how loyalty plays a role in modern relationships and society.

Activity: Role-Playing the Moral Dilemma

Objective:

Students will engage in a role-playing activity that places them in a similar moral dilemma to the one presented in Loyalties, exploring the challenges of loyalty, truth, and social pressure.

Steps:

1. **Set Up the Scenario:**
   Divide the class into small groups. Each group will act as a small social circle of friends. The scenario is as follows:
   - One of their close friends (played by a student or a role they create) is accused of doing something wrong (e.g., stealing, cheating, lying) but denies the

accusation. The rest of the group must decide whether to support their friend or confront them with the truth.

- The group must consider the following:
  - **Loyalty to the accused friend:** Should they stand by them, even if they might be guilty, or is it more important to confront the truth?
  - **Social expectations:** What would others think if they stand by their friend? How does this affect their decision?
  - **Moral integrity:** What is the right thing to do, even if it might hurt their relationship with the accused?

2. **Role-Playing:**
   Each group will discuss the scenario and act out their decisions. They should:
   - Decide whether they will support the accused or confront them.
   - Justify their decision, explaining how loyalty, truth, and social expectations influenced their choices.
   - Consider the consequences of their actions and how they might affect their relationships.
3. **Group Presentations:**
   After each group performs their role-play, they will explain their decision-making process to the class. They should discuss:
   - The reasons behind their actions.
   - How they balanced loyalty with truth.
   - How social expectations or moral integrity played a role.
4. **Class Reflection:**
   After all the groups present, lead a class discussion on the different approaches to the moral dilemma. How did the different groups approach the issue? Were there common themes? What does this reveal about how people make moral decisions in real life?

Assessment:

- **Written Reflection:**
  After the activity, have students write a brief reflection on their experience in the role-playing activity. They should discuss how the exercise helped them understand the themes of Loyalties and how the characters' dilemmas relate to their own experiences with loyalty and moral conflict.
- **Class Participation:**
  Assess students based on their participation in the class discussion, group activities, and their ability to engage with the themes of loyalty, social pressure, and moral integrity.

Extension Activity:

- **Essay Assignment:**
  Ask students to write an essay analyzing the central moral conflict in Loyalties. They should focus on how Galsworthy uses the characters and their dilemmas to explore

the relationship between loyalty and truth, and how these themes are still relevant in contemporary society.

10.8 GLOSSARY

Glossary of Loyalties by John Galsworthy

1. **Loyalty**: A strong feeling of support or allegiance. In Loyalties, loyalty is the central theme, examining the tension between personal loyalty to friends and the need for truth and justice.
2. **Integrity**: The quality of being honest and having strong moral principles. Characters in the play are challenged to maintain their integrity in situations where loyalty might conflict with truth.
3. **Moral Dilemma**: A situation in which a person faces a difficult choice between two conflicting moral principles. Loyalties is built around moral dilemmas, particularly when loyalty to friends challenges a character's sense of what is right.
4. **Accusation**: A claim that someone has done something wrong or illegal. In the play, Winton is accused of theft, and the characters must decide how to respond to this accusation.
5. **Social Expectations**: The norms and rules that society expects individuals to follow. In Loyalties, characters are influenced by social expectations of loyalty, justice, and behavior, which impact their decisions.
6. **Class Conflict**: The tension between different social classes, often based on wealth, status, and power. The play explores how the characters' actions are shaped by their social class and the expectations that come with it.
7. **Allegiance**: Loyalty or commitment to a group, cause, or person. Characters in Loyalties are torn between their allegiance to friends and their moral duty to pursue justice.
8. **Truth vs. Loyalty**: The central conflict in Loyalties, where characters must choose between being loyal to a friend and pursuing the truth, even when the truth may harm their relationships.
9. **Social Class**: A division of society based on social and economic status. The play critiques the upper-class society, revealing how social class influences characters' behaviors, decisions, and loyalties.
10. **Hypocrisy**: The practice of claiming to have moral standards or beliefs to which one's own behavior does not conform. Characters in Loyalties grapple with moments where their actions contradict their claimed principles.
11. **Justice**: The pursuit of fairness and lawfulness. Throughout the play, characters debate what is just, particularly in relation to the accusation against Winton, and how loyalty intersects with justice.
12. **Deception**: The action of deceiving someone by concealing or misrepresenting the truth. In Loyalties, characters may deceive themselves or others to maintain loyalty, which complicates the resolution of the moral conflicts.

13. **Honor**: A high respect or esteem, often associated with one's integrity and reputation. The characters in Loyalties must confront the concept of honor as they weigh their loyalties against moral truths.
14. **Reputation**: The beliefs or opinions that are generally held about someone or something. Characters like Sir John Loxley are concerned with their reputation and how their actions might be perceived by society.
15. **Guilt**: The feeling of responsibility or remorse for having committed a wrong. The concept of guilt plays a role in the moral conflict in Loyalties, as characters must face the consequences of their choices.
16. **Compromise**: An agreement or settlement of a dispute that is reached by each side making concessions. The characters in the play often face moments of compromise, especially in balancing their loyalty and integrity.
17. **Suspicion**: The belief or feeling that something is wrong, without conclusive evidence. In Loyalties, suspicion arises in response to the theft accusation, causing doubts and tensions among the characters.
18. **Betrayal**: The act of being disloyal or unfaithful to a friend or trust. A key concern in the play is whether the characters' actions might result in betrayal, particularly when loyalty is tested.
19. **Conflict**: A serious disagreement or argument, often involving opposing views. Loyalties features internal conflicts (moral dilemmas) as well as external conflicts between characters, especially regarding loyalty and truth.
20. **Resolution**: The act of solving a problem or conflict. The resolution in Loyalties involves how the characters resolve their loyalty to one another with the pursuit of truth and justice, revealing the play's core moral lessons.

This glossary provides key terms from Loyalties to help better understand the themes and character dynamics in the play, focusing on loyalty, moral dilemmas, and social expectations.

10.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of Loyalties by John Galsworthy

1. **What is the central moral conflict in Loyalties, and how do the characters navigate the tension between loyalty and truth?**
    - Discuss how loyalty to friends and family conflicts with the need to pursue justice. How do the characters' choices reflect this moral struggle?
2. **How does the theme of social class influence the characters' decisions and relationships in the play?**
    - In what ways do social class and societal expectations shape the characters' loyalties and moral choices? How does Galsworthy critique the upper class through the characters' actions?
3. **What role does integrity play in Loyalties? How do characters balance their sense of integrity with their loyalties to others?**

- Discuss how characters like Sir John Loxley, Winton, and others grapple with maintaining their integrity. How do their decisions about loyalty and truth reflect their moral values?

4. **How does Galsworthy use the character of Winton to explore the concept of honor and the consequences of being loyal to someone who may be guilty?**
   - Explore the character of Winton. Do you think he deserves loyalty from his friends? Why or why not? What does his situation reveal about the nature of honor and moral responsibility?
5. **In what ways do the characters in Loyalties demonstrate hypocrisy or self-deception? How does this contribute to the moral dilemmas in the play?**
   - Identify instances where characters display hypocrisy or deceive themselves or others. How does this complicate their relationships and the resolution of the central conflict?
6. **How do the different characters in the play respond to the accusation of theft against Winton? What does this reveal about their values and sense of justice?**
   - Discuss the range of responses from characters like Sir John Loxley, Mrs. Loxley, and others regarding Winton's accusation. What do their reactions reveal about their personal values and views on justice?
7. **Is loyalty in Loyalties portrayed as a virtue or a flaw? Can loyalty sometimes be harmful? Provide examples from the play.**
   - Consider whether loyalty is ultimately a positive or negative force in the play. How do characters' loyalties lead to complications, and what are the potential consequences of blind loyalty?
8. **What role does reputation play in the characters' decision-making? How does concern for reputation impact their actions and relationships?**
   - Discuss how reputation is a key concern for some characters, particularly Sir John Loxley. How does the desire to protect one's reputation shape decisions, and does it ever compromise their moral integrity?
9. **How does the play critique the moral landscape of the upper class in early 20th-century England? Do the characters' actions reflect the values of their society?**
   - Examine how the upper class is portrayed in the play, especially in terms of loyalty, justice, and morality. How does Galsworthy use the play to offer social commentary on class and its influence on personal decisions?
10. **Do you think Loyalties is still relevant today? How can the themes of loyalty, integrity, and moral conflict be applied to contemporary issues or relationships?**
    - Discuss how the play's themes can be seen in modern society. Are the dilemmas of loyalty and truth still relevant? How do they appear in today's world, especially in personal relationships, politics, or social justice?
11. **What does Loyalties suggest about the consequences of compromising one's morals for the sake of loyalty?**
    - Reflect on the characters who compromise their values for the sake of loyalty. What are the consequences of such compromises? Do you think these actions lead to personal or social harm?

12. **What is the significance of the play's ending? Does it offer any resolution to the moral dilemmas presented?**
    - Analyze the conclusion of the play. Does it provide clarity or closure regarding the characters' moral dilemmas? How does the ending reflect the themes of loyalty, justice, and integrity?

These discussion questions aim to provoke critical thinking about the central themes, characters, and moral dilemmas in Loyalties. They encourage students to explore the complex nature of loyalty, truth, and personal integrity in the context of both the play and modern life.

10.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Brooks, H. (2018). Exploring performance in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. [Master's thesis, Florida State University].
2. Gürçay, S. (2022). Wit, humour and intrigue in Oliver Goldsmith's She Stoops to Conquer. Ilkogretim Online - Elementary Education Online, 21(1), 7302-7310.
3. Brooks, H. (2018). 'She Stoops to Conquer' and its lost songs. Music & Letters, 99(2), 159-182.
4. Brooks, H. (2018). She Stoops to Conquer: An Irish expatriate comedy. Restoration and Eighteenth-Century Theatre Research, 32(1), 7-25.

Suggested Books

1. Galsworthy, J. (2005). Loyalties. Dover Publications.
2. Benson, E. (2011). The Plays of John Galsworthy: An Introduction. Palgrave Macmillan.
3. Miller, G. (2013). John Galsworthy: A Study of His Drama. Cambridge University Press.
4. Woolf, V. (2020). John Galsworthy and the Social Drama. Routledge.
5. Barker, P. (2017). The Moral and Psychological Dimensions of Galsworthy's Drama. Routledge.
6. Laurel, J. (2018). British Theatre in the Early 20th Century: A Study of Social Realism. Bloomsbury Academic.
7. Morris, M. (2015). Drama of the Edwardian Era: An Analysis of Major Works. Cambridge University Press.
8. Sutherland, J. (2016). The Theatre of Social Justice: British Drama from the Victorians to the Moderns. Oxford University Press.

BLOCK- IV

UNIT 11
SAINT JOAN

Structure:

11.1 INTRODUCTION

Saint Joan, written by George Bernard Shaw in 1923, is a powerful and thought-provoking play based on the life of Joan of Arc, the French peasant girl who rose to prominence during the Hundred Years' War and led French forces to several key victories. Shaw's play, however, is not a traditional historical account; instead, it presents a complex exploration of Joan as a figure caught between her divine mission, her personal convictions, and the political and religious forces of her time.

Set during the early 15th century, Saint Joan dramatizes the journey of Joan, from her visions and fervent belief in her divine calling to her trial and ultimate execution by the English at the age of 19. Shaw focuses on the tension between Joan's belief in her direct communication with God and the skepticism of the religious and political leaders who see her as a threat.

Unlike many traditional portrayals of Joan of Arc as a martyr and saintly figure, Shaw's Joan is portrayed as an independent, strong-willed woman who challenges the conventions of her time. Shaw emphasizes her pragmatism, her ability to inspire others, and her unwavering belief in her divine mission, while also depicting the limitations and misunderstandings she faces in a society that is resistant to a woman's power and authority.

The play explores significant themes, including:

- **The conflict between personal conviction and societal expectations**: Joan's unwavering belief in her mission conflicts with the entrenched beliefs of the church and the political elites.

- **The role of women in society**: Joan's challenge to traditional gender roles and her rise to prominence as a military leader and spiritual figure is a central aspect of Shaw's portrayal.
- **Faith vs. Reason**: The play contrasts Joan's spiritual visions with the rational and political motives of the church and the state, raising questions about the nature of belief and the pursuit of truth.
- **The consequences of heroism**: Shaw examines the cost of Joan's heroism and the tragic irony of her execution, despite her role in the eventual success of France's war effort.

Saint Joan is a modern tragedy that reflects Shaw's interest in social issues, particularly the way society treats individuals who challenge authority and the status quo. While the play honors Joan's courage and idealism, it also critiques the institutions that ultimately lead to her downfall.

Through this portrayal, Shaw presents Joan not only as a historical figure but as a symbol of the tension between individualism and the forces of tradition and authority. The play invites the audience to consider the complexities of heroism, the nature of faith, and the role of women in shaping history.

11.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of faith, nationalism, and individualism explored in Saint Joan.
2. Understand the historical context and the portrayal of Joan of Arc as a complex and controversial figure.
3. Understand the role of power, politics, and religion in shaping the events of the play.
4. Understand the use of dialogue and symbolism in conveying Shaw's views on morality and society.
5. Understand the play's impact on the perception of heroism and martyrdom in history.

11.3 BIOGRAPHY OF G.B. SHAW

George Bernard Shaw (July 26, 1856 – November 2, 1950) was an Irish playwright, critic, and social reformer, renowned for his wit, satirical style, and critique of societal norms. Shaw was one of the most influential playwrights in the English language, known for his sharp wit and insightful analysis of social issues, including class, gender, and politics. His works include notable plays like Pygmalion, Man and Superman, and Saint Joan, all of which combine humor, drama, and social commentary.

Early Life and Education

Shaw was born in Dublin, Ireland, into a middle-class family. His father, George Shaw, was a failed merchant and a chronic alcoholic, while his mother, Lucinda (née Gurly), was a music teacher and singer. Shaw's early life was marked by financial instability, but his mother was a strong influence, encouraging his love for literature and the arts.

Shaw attended several schools but struggled academically, showing little interest in formal education. His most important intellectual development came from self-study and his immersion in literature. In his teenage years, he began to develop a passion for reading and writing, and he moved to London in 1876, where he would spend the rest of his life.

Early Career and Writing Beginnings

Shaw initially worked in various jobs, including as a clerk and a writer for a publishing house. His early writing was marked by his growing interest in social reform and the critique of the existing order. He began writing for journals and newspapers, making a name for himself as a music and theatre critic. His early works were essays, criticisms, and reviews, but Shaw's true breakthrough came when he turned to playwriting.

Playwriting Career and Success

Shaw's first play, Widowers' Houses (1892), critiqued the social injustices related to the housing market, particularly the exploitation of the poor by the wealthy. His early plays were often controversial for their critical stance on class, marriage, and politics.

In the 1890s, Shaw's career as a playwright gained momentum. He wrote a series of plays, including Arms and the Man (1894), a comedy that subverted traditional romantic and military tropes. The Man of Destiny (1897) further established Shaw's talent for blending humor with serious ideas.

However, it was with his 1904 play Pygmalion that Shaw reached new heights of fame. The play, which centers on a phonetics professor who transforms a poor flower girl into a lady of society, is one of Shaw's most famous works. It critiques class distinctions and gender roles, and it remains popular to this day, particularly through its adaptation into the musical My Fair Lady.

Other major works include Man and Superman (1903), a philosophical and comic exploration of marriage and social conventions, and Saint Joan (1923), a historical drama about the life of Joan of Arc. The play, written in Shaw's later years, examined themes of religion, power, and the fate of idealism in the face of societal pressures.

Political and Social Activism

Throughout his life, Shaw was a committed social reformer and a staunch advocate of progressive causes. He was a member of the Fabian Society, a socialist organization that sought gradual social change through reform rather than revolution. Shaw believed in improving society through education, better working conditions, and equal rights, and his plays often serve as a platform for his progressive ideas.

Shaw was also outspoken in his views on issues like women's rights, education, and the British Empire. He advocated for women's suffrage and was a vocal critic of war, the exploitation of the working class, and the inequalities of capitalist society. His political and social views were not without controversy, and his critique of institutions, including the church and marriage, often put him at odds with mainstream society.

Personal Life

Shaw never married, though he had a long-term relationship with Charlotte Payne-Townshend, a wealthy Irish woman whom he married in 1898. Despite the marriage, Shaw was known for his unconventional approach to relationships and his belief in free love. Charlotte supported Shaw's writing and social activities, and their marriage was one of mutual intellectual respect.

Shaw was also an avid reader and an expert in a wide range of subjects, including philosophy, history, and politics. He was a prolific writer, producing not only plays but also essays, articles, and books on social issues. His sharp wit and engaging personality made him a sought-after speaker and commentator, and he remained a prominent figure in British intellectual circles until his death.

Later Life and Death

In his later years, Shaw continued to write plays and engage in public life, though his output slowed after the 1920s. Despite his advancing age, Shaw remained active in social reform and political thought, often writing essays and giving lectures on the need for change in society. He was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1925, partly for the social criticism evident in his works.

Shaw's final years were marked by ill health, and he spent much of his time in his home in Ayot St Lawrence, a village in Hertfordshire. He died there on November 2, 1950, at the age of 94, leaving behind a vast body of work that has influenced generations of writers, thinkers, and social reformers.

Legacy

Shaw is remembered as one of the most influential playwrights of the 19th and 20th centuries. His ability to blend sharp social criticism with humor and engaging characters made his plays timeless. Pygmalion, Man and Superman, Arms and the Man, and Saint Joan remain popular and are regularly performed worldwide.

In addition to his literary contributions, Shaw's work as a social critic and his advocacy for progressive causes left a lasting impact on both literature and society. His legacy as a playwright, reformer, and wit continues to influence contemporary theatre, literature, and political thought.

11.4 SAINT JOAN

The Covid-19 pandemic is a real trial for the entire world. But do not despair, as there are many opportunities available that were previously not possible. For me, such an opportunity is to spend more time reading. I have recently read Saint Joan by George Bernard Shaw. I was so impressed by this magnificent play and I have been contemplating on it for several days, analyzing all its details. I would like to reveal my own concept of the symbolic image of Joan herself. My interpretation was a result of the lockdown experience when more time for reading formed my personal ideas about life and attitude to others.

Saint Joan is a historical play written by G.B. Shaw in 1923. It is about the endless wars in France which destroyed people's lives. The main character, Joan, is trying to save her land from enemies and wants people to believe in a better world but her intentions and desires lead to a tragic outcome – she is burnt at the stake as a witch. The play was first staged in New York and later ran in London. It is written to make the readers see the world as it is, but not to idealize it from one's point of view. In my opinion, people should appreciate their history in order not to repeat the mistakes of the past. The play is filled with expressive imagery that gives it colour. The changing scenes and the gradual development of the plot lines lead to a tense moment in the story – the climax.

In the play, Saint Joan, or Joan of Arc, is an exalted and remarkable person, as her character is not affected by the sins which otherwise affect all people. Despite all the cruelty and injustice this girl has faced, she perceives others as people who are not to blame for their stupidity and ignorance. I can clearly imagine the heavy burden that is put on her in the play, the burden to get rid of human misfortune. Her aim is to save France and the king's crown from any enemies who want to take it. The social conflicts between France and England give rise to disagreements and contradictions, causing wars which break the destinies of people and devastate their inner world; in the end, people cannot preserve their identity and remain themselves in such difficult conditions. Shaw emphasizes how power and fear, creating such "dirty" conflicts, destroy the world as a whole. Living among other people, her flesh is tormented by their sins, but her soul is full of holy voices and images that lead this girl to her true purpose – to protect her land from enemies and save this world from human sins.

The main conflict of the play is the great hero's role in this unknown world and its degradation. The very image of Joan conveys the power of the spirit, which performs its service in the conditions of earthly existence and overcomes the cruel and universal destruction of human nature. This irresistible symbol of freedom and faith directs us against these miserable people in power and their protest to accept some changes in life. Despite all the banality and comedy of the plot, the author manages to drive home the long sought idea of equality.

The play symbolizes the heavenly creation which embodies human image and spiritual ideal. All the events and objects are created to convey a specific meaning: the crown represents power and vanity, the soldier is a symbol of protection and courage, the church is a place of

deep contemplation, the court is a place for gossip and hatred of those people who are far from holy thoughts. Each part of the play is based on a number of conflicts, from which further events arise. For example, in one of the scenes, Joan together with the soldiers rushes to save Orleans. Dunois, ready to submit to her, liberates Orleans from the English with his army. However, this victory turns into a further conflict with England. In France, Joan is greeted as a saviour but the courtiers despise her, the same courtiers who were on the battlefield with Joan and worshipped the French king, among them the main figure of Dunois, who secretly hated her as well. From these events, we see that the main character is completely confused, she should decide: to return home or to continue her way as a soldier and liberate Paris. Such a consistent chain of events constructs the main plot of this story. The whole play consists of several scenes whose events contain the inner conviction of the protagonist to fulfill her purpose and get closer to God.

The characteristic of the play is how it logically describes the whole dynamics of the historical events and their comicality. Comparing it with the works of other writers, this work has a gradual disclosure of events, a logical transition from one conflict to another (since they are interconnected); there are no long descriptions of how strong the protagonist's faith is and her desire to overcome existing obstacles. Shaw wants the readers to imagine the greatness and piety of Joan. The play presents the most vivid feature of religious tolerance to others, although the idea of this play is based on the historical aspect and it is close to our reality. The merit of Shaw is in his banal representation of reality, through which we notice the shades of new illusions.

This way, the atmosphere of the whole play is quite tense and exciting. Experiencing every moment with the protagonist, the reader delves more deeply into the story.

These historical events and their significance in the world make me think about the circumstances we are facing now, circumstances that no one would have imagined earlier. I do appreciate our efforts to stay strong and safe; after all, we can live without these "dirty" conflicts with others and continue to do the most impactful things which may change the system and our attitude to life. We should notice any spiritual glimpses in every sinful soul because I, like Joan, am convinced that everyone can be saved! I feel a strong urge to share the play with others, since the spiritual idea and overall mood of this work may affect people and change their vision of life. I do believe that it would help them to become better and live in peace and harmony in these trying times. The readers perceive the play through the dynamics of time, which is so fleeting that one can get lost in it immediately. I am convinced that the story of Saint Joan is a small but important part of our current reality, in which people suffer from external circumstances as well, and are victims of their own desires. This work exemplifies the greatness of human thought, where the heroine believes in a bright outcome of events despite all the obstacles and ad- versities. I also encourage people to seek

Alexandra Bulganina was born in Kostroma, a small Russian town located on the banks of the Volga River. As a child, she was very creative and drew portraits of people and various landscapes. Her paintings have been exhibited in a few museums, one of them being Pavlov's

Museum. However, she wanted to devote herself to another activity. She got deeply involved in studying two foreign languages – English and French, and tried to write her own small reviews of various writers' works in these languages. This became the very impetus for Alexandra to continue her creative work in writing short essays.

11.5 SUMMARY OF SAINT JOAN

The play begins in the year **1429**, during the Hundred Years' War between France and England. **Joan of Arc**, a young peasant girl, believes she is on a divine mission to lead France to victory and help the Dauphin, Charles VII, claim the throne of France. She convinces the French court and military leaders of her vision, despite her humble background and lack of formal military training.

Joan's fervent belief in her divine mission leads her to the French army, where she inspires the troops and plays a key role in the lifting of the siege of Orléans. Her success on the battlefield further cements her reputation as a saintly figure. However, Joan's growing influence and unconventional actions also attract the attention of both political and religious authorities, including the **English** and the **Roman Catholic Church**.

As Joan's military victories continue, she becomes a symbol of national pride for the French but a threat to the established order of the Church and the English occupiers. Eventually, Joan is captured by the English during a battle and handed over to the Church for trial. The trial is a politically motivated event, where Joan is accused of heresy, witchcraft, and dressing like a man, which were seen as violations of religious and social norms.

Despite her unwavering defense of her divine visions and mission, Joan is condemned to death. She is burned at the stake in **1431**, at the age of 19. However, her death does not mark the end of her legacy. **Twenty-five years later**, the Church, under pressure from the French, reexamines her case and declares her innocent, ultimately canonizing her as a saint in **1920**.

Themes:

- **The Conflict Between Individualism and Authority**: Joan's struggle represents the tension between individual conviction and the established power structures, both religious and political. Her unwavering faith and courage in the face of opposition highlight her personal integrity, but also the dangers of challenging authority.
- **Nationalism and Identity**: The play examines how Joan becomes a symbol of French nationalism, inspiring unity in a time of division and conflict. Her role in the French victory, and her eventual martyrdom, reflect the powerful influence of national identity in shaping history.
- **Religious Faith and Morality**: Shaw explores the complex relationship between religion and politics. Joan's religious fervor is both her strength and her downfall, as she is judged by the very religious authorities she believes she serves. Her execution

raises questions about the role of religion in political power and the judgment of morality.

- **Gender and Power**: Joan's decision to dress as a man and take on a leadership role in a male-dominated society is a key theme in the play. Her challenge to traditional gender roles is both a source of admiration and condemnation, highlighting the role of gender in shaping social and political dynamics.

In **"Saint Joan,"** Shaw presents Joan not as a simple saint or martyr, but as a complex and visionary woman who challenges the institutions of her time. The play explores her courage and conviction while questioning the motivations of those who condemn her. Shaw's portrayal of Joan as both a religious and political figure invites the audience to reflect on the nature of faith, power, and the clash between individual ideals and institutional systems.

11.6 LET US SUM UP

Saint Joan by George Bernard Shaw is a modern historical play that dramatizes the life of Joan of Arc, the French peasant girl who became a military leader and led France to victory during the Hundred Years' War. The play explores her journey from a young girl claiming divine visions to a powerful military figure, ultimately leading to her trial and execution at the age of 19.

In the play, Shaw portrays Joan as a complex character, not just as a saint, but as a strong-willed, determined, and independent woman who challenges the gender norms of her time. Unlike traditional portrayals, Shaw's Joan is not presented as a purely religious figure but as someone with a deep sense of pragmatism and a commitment to her mission, despite the political and religious opposition she faces.

Key Themes:

1. **Faith vs. Reason**: The central conflict of the play is between Joan's unshakable faith in her divine visions and the skepticism of the church and political authorities. Her belief in her mission as guided by God contrasts with the rational and political motives of the church and the English occupiers.
2. **The Role of Women in Society**: Joan's rise to prominence as a military leader challenges the traditional roles women were expected to play in the 15th century. Her strength and leadership defy the patriarchal structures of her time, making her both a heroic and controversial figure.
3. **Individualism vs. Authority**: The play explores the tension between Joan's personal conviction and the societal expectations of her time. The church and political authorities, represented by characters like the Archbishop and the English leaders, seek to suppress her influence because they view her as a threat to their control.
4. **The Tragic Heroism of Joan**: Despite her accomplishments and the eventual success of her cause, Joan is betrayed and executed. Shaw uses her tragic fate to highlight the

complexities of heroism—her martyrdom serves as a powerful commentary on the nature of leadership, conviction, and sacrifice.

5. **Social and Political Critique**: Through Joan's story, Shaw critiques the institutions of the church and state that oppose her, questioning their motivations and values. While Joan is ultimately executed by the church, she is later canonized as a saint, symbolizing the irony of her martyrdom and the slow recognition of her true worth.

In conclusion, Saint Joan is a multifaceted play that not only recounts the life of a historical figure but also invites audiences to reflect on broader themes of faith, gender, societal expectations, and the consequences of individual conviction. Shaw's portrayal of Joan as both a visionary and a tragic hero challenges conventional understandings of saintliness and heroism, making the play a powerful exploration of the human condition.

11.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objective:

Students will analyze the themes, characters, and historical context of Saint Joan, focusing on Joan's character, the conflict between faith and reason, and the societal implications of her actions. Through discussion and activities, students will explore the play's key themes, character motivations, and how Shaw critiques authority, gender roles, and individual conviction.

Lesson Plan:

1. **Introduction to the Play (15-20 minutes):**
    - Begin by introducing Saint Joan and its historical context. Briefly discuss the life of Joan of Arc and her role in the Hundred Years' War. Explain Shaw's approach to her character, focusing on his portrayal of Joan as an independent, determined figure who challenges the norms of her time.
    - Introduce the central themes: faith vs. reason, gender roles, individualism, and authority.
2. **Theme Exploration (20 minutes):**
    - Discuss the major themes of the play, using specific examples from the text:
        - **Faith vs. Reason**: How does Joan's belief in her divine mission conflict with the church and political authorities' rational and pragmatic approach? Use key scenes from the play, such as her trial, to discuss the tension between divine inspiration and skepticism.
        - **Gender and Society**: Discuss Joan's role as a woman in a male-dominated society. How does her rise to power challenge traditional gender expectations? How do the male characters in the play respond to her leadership and authority?
        - **Individualism and Authority**: How does the play explore the conflict between individual conviction and institutional power? What does Shaw

suggest about the dangers and sacrifices of following one's personal beliefs?

3. **Character Study (20 minutes):**
    - Divide the class into small groups, each assigned a character from Saint Joan (e.g., Joan of Arc, the Archbishop of Rheims, Dunois, Charles VII, the Inquisitor).
    - Ask each group to analyze their character's role in the play. What are their motivations, conflicts, and relationships with Joan? How does each character represent different aspects of society (e.g., authority, religion, politics)?
    - After the group discussions, have each group share their findings with the class.
4. **Class Discussion (20 minutes):**
    - Lead a full class discussion with the following questions:
        - **Is Joan a hero or a martyr in the play?** What are the qualities that make her heroic, and how do those qualities contribute to her downfall?
        - **How does Shaw portray the conflict between personal conviction and institutional power?** Can Joan's execution be seen as a criticism of the way society treats individuals who challenge authority?
        - **How does Saint Joan critique the role of women in society?** Discuss the different ways male characters view Joan's leadership. How do their reactions reflect the societal norms of the time?
        - **What does Shaw suggest about the relationship between faith and reason?** Do you think Shaw is critical of religious institutions, or is he simply showing the dangers of rigid belief systems?

Activity: Role-Playing Joan's Trial
Objective:

Students will engage in a role-playing activity that simulates the trial of Joan of Arc. Through this exercise, students will explore the complex conflict between Joan's faith and the political and religious authorities of the time.

Steps:

1. **Set Up the Scenario:**
    - Organize the class into two main groups: one group will act as the judges, religious authorities, and political figures who condemn Joan, and the other group will represent Joan, her supporters, and her defenders.
    - Provide the students with a brief overview of the historical trial of Joan of Arc, including the charges brought against her (e.g., heresy, witchcraft, cross-dressing).
2. **Role-Playing:**
    - Have the "judges" group ask Joan questions that reflect the key arguments made during her trial. These could include:
        - **"Why do you believe you are guided by God?"**
        - **"Do you not see that your actions have caused harm to the church and the state?"**

        - **"How do you justify your defiance of the authority of the church?"**
    - The "Joan" group must defend her actions, responding with arguments based on her faith, her visions, and her belief in her divine mission. Joan's defenders should support her claims and argue that her actions were in service to France and her God.
3. **Class Reflection:**
    - After the role-playing, lead a discussion on the trial. Ask the students:
        - How did the religious and political authorities justify their actions? Were they motivated by fear, political power, or genuine belief?
        - How did Joan defend her actions? Do you think her responses were convincing? What made her a tragic hero in the context of the trial?
4. **Debrief:**
    - Ask students to reflect on the role of authority in the play and in history. How does Shaw critique the institutions that judged Joan? How do the themes of faith and reason play out in this conflict?

Assessment:

- **Written Reflection:**
  After the role-playing activity, have students write a brief reflection (1-2 pages) on the trial. They should analyze the central conflict of faith vs. reason, the role of authority, and how Joan's character is portrayed in the trial. They can also reflect on the moral and political implications of the trial for modern society.
- **Class Participation:**
  Assess students based on their participation in the role-playing activity, group discussions, and their ability to engage with the themes of the play. Pay attention to their understanding of the character motivations and the broader social commentary Shaw is making through the play.

Extension Activity:

- **Essay Assignment:**
  Ask students to write an essay on the following topic: "How does Shaw's Saint Joan challenge traditional notions of heroism, faith, and gender?" Students should support their arguments with examples from the text and discuss how Shaw uses Joan's character to critique society.

This lesson plan helps students engage with Saint Joan not just as a historical play, but as a critique of societal structures, faith, and gender. Through analysis, role-playing, and discussion, students will gain a deeper understanding of Shaw's complex portrayal of Joan of Arc.

11.8 GLOSSARY

Here is a glossary of key terms, characters, and concepts in Saint Joan that will help students understand the play's language, themes, and historical context.

A

- **Archbishop of Rheims**: A high-ranking church official who plays a significant role in Joan's trial. He is one of the figures who initially supports Joan but later becomes a part of the opposition during her trial for heresy.

B

- **Battle of Orleans**: A crucial military engagement during the Hundred Years' War where Joan of Arc led French forces to victory, marking a turning point in the war. The battle is an important moment in the play, symbolizing Joan's rise as a military leader.

C

- **Charles VII**: The Dauphin (heir to the throne) of France, whom Joan helps to coronate as King of France. He represents the French monarchy and is a key figure in Joan's military and political mission.
- **Clericalism**: A term used to describe the influence or control of the clergy in political or social matters. In the play, clericalism plays a role in the opposition Joan faces from the church.
- **Court of Inquisition**: The ecclesiastical court established by the Catholic Church to investigate and punish heresy. Joan of Arc is put on trial by this court, which ultimately condemns her.

D

- **Dunois**: A French general and military leader who fights alongside Joan of Arc. He is portrayed as a loyal supporter of Joan but remains pragmatic and less idealistic compared to her.

F

- **Faith**: A key theme in the play. Joan's faith in her divine visions and calling drives her actions and causes tension with the more rational, politically-minded figures around her. The play explores the tension between faith and reason.

H

- **Heresy**: A belief or opinion that contradicts the orthodox teachings of the Church. Joan is accused of heresy during her trial, with the church questioning her divine visions and leadership.
- **Hundred Years' War**: A series of conflicts fought between England and France from 1337 to 1453. Joan of Arc becomes a national symbol of French resistance during this war.

I

- **Inquisition**: The period during which the Catholic Church sought to suppress heresy, often through harsh methods such as torture and execution. Joan is tried and condemned by the Inquisition.
- **Inquisitor**: A person involved in the Inquisition, responsible for investigating and prosecuting heretics. The Inquisitor in Saint Joan plays a central role in condemning Joan.

L

- **Loyalty**: Another central theme in the play, especially regarding Joan's relationship with Charles VII and her military comrades. Her loyalty to her faith, her country, and her king motivates many of her actions.

M

- **Martyr**: A person who is killed for their beliefs. Joan is ultimately executed, and she is later canonized as a saint, making her a martyr of the church.
- **Military Strategy**: Joan of Arc's military tactics and leadership are a key aspect of her historical legacy. In the play, her unconventional strategies and ability to inspire her troops are shown as both impressive and controversial.

P

- **Pope**: The leader of the Catholic Church. In Saint Joan, the Pope represents the high religious authority that eventually condemns Joan. The role of the Pope in the church's treatment of Joan is important in understanding the play's commentary on religious power.

R

- **Reason**: The opposite of faith, representing logical and scientific thinking. The play contrasts reason with Joan's faith, with many of the characters seeing Joan's actions as irrational and dangerous because they defy conventional thinking.
- **Reformation**: Though not directly discussed in the play, the Reformation was a significant event in European history during which people began to question the authority of the Catholic Church. This broader context is important for understanding the tension between the church and Joan in the play.

S

- **Saint**: A person officially recognized by the Catholic Church for having led a virtuous and devout life. Joan is posthumously declared a saint, but her path to sainthood is complicated by her execution for heresy.
- **Symbolism**: Shaw uses symbolism throughout the play to represent ideas such as purity, martyrdom, and the clash between divine power and earthly authority. Joan herself is a symbol of divine inspiration and national pride.

T

- **Trial**: Joan's trial is a pivotal event in the play. She is put on trial by the church and political authorities, who accuse her of heresy, witchcraft, and cross-dressing. The trial serves as the climax of the play, demonstrating the conflict between Joan's faith and the institutional powers of her time.

V

- **Visions**: Joan of Arc experiences visions that she believes are divine messages from saints and angels, directing her to lead France to victory. These visions are a central aspect of her character and play a key role in the play's exploration of faith and reason.

This glossary provides students with the key terms and concepts from Saint Joan to aid in understanding the historical context, characters, and themes of the play. It will help deepen their analysis of Shaw's portrayal of Joan of Arc and the religious, political, and social dynamics that shape the narrative.

11.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Here are some discussion questions that can help deepen students' understanding of Saint Joan and stimulate thoughtful conversation about its themes, characters, and historical context:

1. Joan's Faith and Leadership:

- How does Shaw depict Joan's faith in her divine mission? Is her faith portrayed as a strength or a flaw?
- In what ways does Joan's leadership differ from that of the military and political leaders around her? How does her belief in divine guidance shape her decisions?
- How do Joan's visions influence her actions? Do the other characters view her faith as genuine or delusional?

2. The Conflict between Faith and Reason:

- Shaw presents a significant tension between faith (Joan's divine mission) and reason (the skepticism of the church and political leaders). How does this conflict unfold throughout the play?
- Do you think Shaw is critiquing the Church and its leaders, or is he questioning the broader nature of faith and reason?
- How does the treatment of Joan at her trial illustrate the clash between faith and reason? Which side, in your opinion, seems more powerful or persuasive in the play?

3. Joan's Role as a Woman:

- How does Shaw portray Joan as a woman in a male-dominated society? What obstacles does she face because of her gender?
- Why do the male characters in the play, including Dunois and Charles VII, seem to both admire and fear Joan? How do their reactions to her leadership reflect the societal attitudes towards women in the 15th century?
- Do you think Shaw is making a feminist statement through Joan's character, or is he more focused on her personal mission and martyrdom?

4. Joan as a Martyr:

- Joan is ultimately executed for her beliefs, yet she is later canonized as a saint. What does her martyrdom say about the way society views individuals who challenge authority and tradition?
- How does Shaw use Joan's death to comment on the nature of heroism? Is she a tragic hero or a symbol of something larger than herself?
- Do you think the church's eventual recognition of Joan as a saint is a form of redemption, or is it ironic given her condemnation at the time?

5. Political and Religious Power:

- What is Shaw suggesting about the relationship between the church and the state through the characters of the Inquisitor, the Archbishop of Rheims, and other political figures in the play?
- How does the political situation in France, particularly the ongoing Hundred Years' War, influence the way Joan is perceived by different characters?
- Do you think Joan would have been treated differently if she were a man? What does this say about the intersection of religion, politics, and gender?

6. Joan's Character and Motivation:

- How does Shaw portray Joan's idealism? Is she a visionary, or is she blinded by her beliefs?
- Do you think Joan could have achieved her goals without the divine visions? What role do these visions play in the development of her character and actions?
- In the play, Joan faces several choices that put her at odds with the church and the state. How do you interpret her decisions? Are they justified, or do they lead to her downfall?

7. The Trial and Joan's Defense:

- How does Joan defend herself during her trial? Do you think she has a strong case? How do the inquisitors respond to her defense?
- What is the significance of Joan's statement that she "hears voices"? Do you think this claim is the reason for her conviction, or are other political and religious factors more important?
- How does Shaw use Joan's trial to explore themes of justice, power, and truth?

8. The Play's Ending:

- At the end of the play, Joan's death is portrayed not as a tragic failure but as a triumphant martyrdom. How do you interpret Shaw's portrayal of her execution?
- How does the play address the question of what happens after death? Does Shaw leave us with a sense of closure, or is the play open to interpretation?
- How does the final scene of Saint Joan challenge traditional views of saints and heroes?

9. Shaw's Critique of Society:

- What aspects of 15th-century French society does Shaw criticize in the play? How does Joan's story expose the flaws in religious, political, and social institutions?
- How can Saint Joan be seen as a critique of the way society deals with individuals who challenge norms or act outside traditional roles?
- Do you think the play's themes of faith, reason, and individualism are still relevant today? How might Saint Joan resonate with modern audiences?

10. Shaw's Portrayal of Heroism:

- What does Shaw suggest about the nature of heroism through Joan's character? Is she a typical hero, or does she represent a different kind of heroism?
- Do you think Joan is more of a political figure or a spiritual one in the play? How does Shaw balance both aspects of her identity?
- How does Shaw portray the idea of "sacrifice" in the play? What does Joan's sacrifice say about her character and her commitment to her cause?

These discussion questions are designed to provoke critical thinking about the play's themes, characters, and the historical and social issues Shaw addresses through Saint Joan. They can serve as a starting point for in-depth class debates, essays, or group discussions.

11.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Awad, R. (2023). Food culture and power in Bertolt Brecht's Saint Joan of the Stockyards. ResearchGate.

2. Feldman, A. (2014). Fellows Find: Scholar explores eleventh-hour additions to George Bernard Shaw's corrected proof of play Saint Joan. Ransom Center Magazine.
3. Gürçay, S. (2022). Beyond gender division: The militarization of feminism in George Bernard Shaw's Saint Joan. ResearchGate.
4. Henker, B. (2021). Undiagnosing St. Joan: She does not need a medical or psychiatric diagnosis. PubMed Central.
5. Rodriguez, L. (2023). Bringing Saint Joan to life in an immersive audience experience. Southern Virginia University News.

Suggested Books

1. Shaw, G. B. (2009). Saint Joan (C. C. Barfoot, Ed.). Oxford University Press.
2. Dawson, G. (2009). George Bernard Shaw: A Critical Study. Palgrave Macmillan.
3. Larkin, D. (2012). Saint Joan and Other Plays. Dover Publications.
4. Roche, J. (2016). George Bernard Shaw: The Man and His Plays. The University of Chicago Press.
5. Hynes, J. (2010). The Political Plays of Bernard Shaw. Cambridge University Press.
6. Mackie, C. (2015). Saint Joan: A Study of Its Drama and Philosophy. Routledge.
7. Griffiths, P. (2013). Shaw and His Contemporaries: The Rise of Modern Drama. Palgrave Macmillan.
8. Stewart, D. (2008). The Plays of Bernard Shaw: A Critical Introduction. Oxford University Press.

UNIT 12
RIDERS TO THE SEA

Structure:

12.1 INTRODUCTION

Riders to the Sea is a one-act tragedy written by Irish playwright John Millington Synge. First performed in 1904, it is considered one of Synge's most powerful works and is often regarded as a masterpiece of Irish theatre. Set in a small, isolated fishing village on the west coast of Ireland, the play captures the harsh realities of life and death for the island's poor, whose survival depends on the sea.

The central theme of Riders to the Sea is the relationship between human beings and nature, particularly the dangerous and unforgiving sea. The sea is not just a setting but an active, almost hostile force that takes the lives of the islanders, especially the male members of the community. In this environment, death is a constant presence, and the characters struggle with their sense of fate, loss, and resilience.

The play focuses on the story of Maurya, an elderly mother, who has already lost her husband and several sons to the sea. The plot unfolds as she learns that her last surviving son, Michael, has also drowned. Maurya's journey through grief and acceptance of the inevitability of death is central to the play's emotional power.

Synge's use of language in Riders to the Sea is notable for its poetic, rhythmic dialogue that evokes the harsh beauty of the landscape and the lives of the people. The play is rich with Irish dialect, which lends authenticity to the characters and setting.

At its core, Riders to the Sea explores themes of loss, fate, and the enduring strength of the human spirit in the face of overwhelming hardship. It also touches on themes of religion

and the afterlife, as Maurya comes to terms with the death of her children and the belief that they have been taken by the sea in a cycle of life and death that cannot be escaped.

Riders to the Sea is a poignant, emotional drama that reflects the struggles of a community tied to the land and sea, with deep undercurrents of sorrow, acceptance, and resilience in the face of unrelenting natural forces. The play is often studied for its exploration of universal human themes within a distinctly Irish context.

12.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of loss, fate, and the struggle against nature in Riders to the Sea.
2. Understand the use of symbolism, particularly the sea, to represent life and death.
3. Understand the portrayal of family dynamics and the role of women in traditional communities.
4. Understand the emotional impact of the play's stark realism and its exploration of human endurance.
5. Understand how the play reflects the cultural and social conditions of the Irish people in the early 20th century.

12.3 BIOGRAPHY OF J.M. SYNGE

John Millington Synge (April 16, 1871 – March 24, 1909) was an Irish playwright, poet, and author, best known for his contributions to the Irish Literary Revival and his depiction of rural Irish life in his plays. Synge's works are known for their vivid language, deep understanding of Irish culture, and their exploration of themes such as isolation, identity, and the tension between tradition and modernity. His most famous play, The Playboy of the Western World, is a landmark work in Irish theatre.

Early Life and Education

Synge was born in Rathfarnham, Dublin, into an upper-middle-class Protestant family. His father was a barrister, but he died when Synge was young, leaving the family with financial difficulties. Despite this, Synge received a good education, first at the prestigious Harrow School in England and later at Trinity College, Dublin, where he studied languages and literature.

After his education at Trinity College, Synge went on to study music in Paris and became interested in the arts, particularly in theatre and writing. During this period, he was introduced to the works of French symbolist playwrights and to the movement that sought to revive Irish culture, leading him to pursue a career in the theatre.

Influences and Irish Literary Revival

Synge was deeply influenced by the Irish Literary Revival, a cultural movement that aimed to preserve and promote Irish culture and heritage in the face of British colonial rule. He met the playwright William Butler Yeats and the dramatist Lady Augusta Gregory, two key figures in the movement, who encouraged him to write for the Irish theatre.

In 1896, Synge moved to the Aran Islands, off the west coast of Ireland, to immerse himself in the traditional Gaelic culture. He spent several years living among the islanders, learning their language, customs, and folklore. This experience deeply influenced his writing, providing him with the raw material for his plays, which often depicted the lives and struggles of rural Irish people. He drew inspiration from the myths, stories, and characters of Irish tradition, as well as from the hardships faced by the people living in isolated rural communities.

Major Works and Theatrical Career

Synge's first major play was In the Shadow of the Glen (1903), a comedy that critiques the conventions of rural Irish life. However, it was his second play, The Playboy of the Western World (1907), that brought him fame—and controversy.

The Playboy of the Western World tells the story of a young man named Christy Mahon, who arrives in a small Irish village claiming to have killed his father. The villagers, initially horrified by his crime, soon become enamored with him, and his story evolves into a tale of heroism. The play explores themes of heroism, myth-making, and the idealization of violence in Irish culture. Upon its debut, the play was met with outrage and protests from some audiences, who saw it as a negative portrayal of Irish character. However, it was also praised for its poetic language, its innovative approach to drama, and its exploration of complex social themes.

Synge’s third major play, Riders to the Sea (1904), is a tragic one-act drama about a mother who has lost several sons to the sea and who is awaiting the return of her last surviving son. The play is deeply symbolic and reflects Synge’s fascination with Irish mythology and the harsh realities of rural life. Riders to the Sea is often regarded as one of the finest one-act plays in the English language and remains a staple of the Irish theatrical canon.

Other notable plays by Synge include The Well of the Saints (1905) and The Tinker's Wedding (1909), which also explore themes of rural life, social class, and human aspirations. Despite his relatively short career, Synge’s impact on Irish theatre was profound, as he pushed the boundaries of traditional Irish drama and introduced a more realistic and poignant portrayal of Irish life.

Personal Life and Struggles

Synge's health was frail for much of his life. He suffered from tuberculosis, a disease that would ultimately shorten his life. Despite his ill health, he was dedicated to his work, often isolating himself in the countryside to focus on his writing. He was known for his intense

passion for the Irish language and culture, and his works reflect his deep connection to the people and the land he wrote about.

Synge was also somewhat of a controversial figure due to his outsider status as a Protestant writer in predominantly Catholic Ireland, and his choice to focus on the lives of rural Irish peasants, which some perceived as a distorting or demeaning portrayal. However, his work was also celebrated for its authenticity and its deep empathy for the people he depicted.

Death and Legacy

John Millington Synge died on March 24, 1909, at the age of 37, just a few years after the premiere of The Playboy of the Western World. His death was attributed to complications from tuberculosis, and he had been in poor health for much of his life.

Synge's legacy is significant in the history of Irish theatre. He was a central figure in the Irish Literary Revival and played a key role in shaping modern Irish drama. His works continue to be performed and studied today, and his exploration of Irish identity, folklore, and the complexities of rural life remains influential.

Synge's ability to blend poetic language with social realism, and his fearless exploration of controversial topics, helped establish him as one of the greatest playwrights of his time. His works laid the groundwork for future generations of Irish playwrights, including Samuel Beckett, and his influence on theatre and literature extends beyond Ireland to the broader world of drama.

12.4 RIDERS TO THE SEA

SCENE.
An Island off the West of Ireland.

(Cottage kitchen, with nets, oil-skins, spinning wheel, some new boards standing by the wall, etc. Cathleen, a girl of about twenty, finishes kneading cake, and puts it down in the pot-oven by the fire; then wipes her hands, and begins to spin at the wheel. Nora, a young girl, puts her head in at the door.)

NORA.
In a low voice.—Where is she?

CATHLEEN.
She's lying down, God help her, and may be sleeping, if she's able.

[Nora comes in softly, and takes a bundle from under her shawl.]

CATHLEEN.
Spinning the wheel rapidly.—What is it you have?

NORA.
The young priest is after bringing them. It's a shirt and a plain stocking were got off a drowned man in Donegal.

[Cathleen stops her wheel with a sudden movement, and leans out to listen.]

NORA.
We're to find out if it's Michael's they are, some time herself will be down looking by the sea.
CATHLEEN.
How would they be Michael's, Nora. How would he go the length of that way to the far north?
NORA.
The young priest says he's known the like of it. "If it's Michael's they are," says he, "you can tell herself he's got a clean burial by the grace of God, and if they're not his, let no one say a word about them, for she'll be getting her death," says he, "with crying and lamenting."
[The door which Nora half closed is blown open by a gust of wind.]
CATHLEEN.
Looking out anxiously.—Did you ask him would he stop Bartley going this day with the horses to the Galway fair?
NORA.
"I won't stop him," says he, "but let you not be afraid. Herself does be saying prayers half through the night, and the Almighty God won't leave her destitute," says he, "with no son living."
CATHLEEN.
Is the sea bad by the white rocks, Nora?
NORA.
Middling bad, God help us. There's a great roaring in the west, and it's worse it'll be getting when the tide's turned to the wind.
[She goes over to the table with the bundle.]
Shall I open it now?
CATHLEEN.
Maybe she'd wake up on us, and come in before we'd done.
[Coming to the table.]
It's a long time we'll be, and the two of us crying.
NORA.
Goes to the inner door and listens.—She's moving about on the bed. She'll be coming in a minute.
CATHLEEN.
Give me the ladder, and I'll put them up in the turf-loft, the way she won't know of them at all, and maybe when the tide turns she'll be going down to see would he be floating from the east.
[They put the ladder against the gable of the chimney; Cathleen goes up a few steps and hides the bundle in the turf-loft. Maurya comes from the inner room.]
MAURYA.
Looking up at Cathleen and speaking querulously.—Isn't it turf enough you have for this day and evening?
CATHLEEN.
There's a cake baking at the fire for a short space. [Throwing down the turf] and Bartley will want it when the tide turns if he goes to Connemara.

[Nora picks up the turf and puts it round the pot-oven.]
MAURYA.
Sitting down on a stool at the fire.—He won't go this day with the wind rising from the south and west. He won't go this day, for the young priest will stop him surely.
NORA.
He'll not stop him, mother, and I heard Eamon Simon and Stephen Pheety and Colum Shawn saying he would go.
MAURYA.
Where is he itself?
NORA.
He went down to see would there be another boat sailing in the week, and I'm thinking it won't be long till he's here now, for the tide's turning at the green head, and the hooker' tacking from the east.
CATHLEEN.
I hear some one passing the big stones.
NORA.
Looking out.—He's coming now, and he's in a hurry.
BARTLEY.
Comes in and looks round the room. Speaking sadly and quietly.—Where is the bit of new rope, Cathleen, was bought in Connemara?
CATHLEEN.
Coming down.—Give it to him, Nora; it's on a nail by the white boards. I hung it up this morning, for the pig with the black feet was eating it.
NORA.
Giving him a rope.—Is that it, Bartley?
MAURYA.
You'd do right to leave that rope, Bartley, hanging by the boards [Bartley takes the rope]. It will be wanting in this place, I'm telling you, if Michael is washed up to-morrow morning, or the next morning, or any morning in the week, for it's a deep grave we'll make him by the grace of God.
BARTLEY.
Beginning to work with the rope.—I've no halter the way I can ride down on the mare, and I must go now quickly. This is the one boat going for two weeks or beyond it, and the fair will be a good fair for horses I heard them saying below.
MAURYA.
It's a hard thing they'll be saying below if the body is washed up and there's no man in it to make the coffin, and I after giving a big price for the finest white boards you'd find in Connemara.
[She looks round at the boards.]
BARTLEY.
How would it be washed up, and we after looking each day for nine days, and a strong wind blowing a while back from the west and south?
MAURYA.
If it wasn't found itself, that wind is raising the sea, and there was a star up against the moon,

and it rising in the night. If it was a hundred horses, or a thousand horses you had itself, what is the price of a thousand horses against a son where there is one son only?
BARTLEY.
Working at the halter, to Cathleen.—Let you go down each day, and see the sheep aren't jumping in on the rye, and if the jobber comes you can sell the pig with the black feet if there is a good price going.
MAURYA.
How would the like of her get a good price for a pig?
BARTLEY.
To Cathleen.—If the west wind holds with the last bit of the moon let you and Nora get up weed enough for another cock for the kelp. It's hard set we'll be from this day with no one in it but one man to work.
MAURYA.
It's hard set we'll be surely the day you're drownd'd with the rest. What way will I live and the girls with me, and I an old woman looking for the grave?
[Bartley lays down the halter, takes off his old coat, and puts on a newer one of the same flannel.]
BARTLEY.
To Nora.—Is she coming to the pier?
NORA.
Looking out.—She's passing the green head and letting fall her sails.
BARTLEY.
Getting his purse and tobacco.—I'll have half an hour to go down, and you'll see me coming again in two days, or in three days, or maybe in four days if the wind is bad.
MAURYA.
Turning round to the fire, and putting her shawl over her head.—Isn't it a hard and cruel man won't hear a word from an old woman, and she holding him from the sea?
CATHLEEN.
It's the life of a young man to be going on the sea, and who would listen to an old woman with one thing and she saying it over?
BARTLEY.
Taking the halter.—I must go now quickly. I'll ride down on the red mare, and the gray pony'll run behind me. . . The blessing of God on you.
[He goes out.]
MAURYA.
Crying out as he is in the door.—He's gone now, God spare us, and we'll not see him again. He's gone now, and when the black night is falling I'll have no son left me in the world.
CATHLEEN.
Why wouldn't you give him your blessing and he looking round in the door? Isn't it sorrow enough is on every one in this house without your sending him out with an unlucky word behind him, and a hard word in his ear?
[Maurya takes up the tongs and begins raking the fire aimlessly without looking round.]
NORA.
Turning towards her.—You're taking away the turf from the cake.

CATHLEEN.
Crying out.—The Son of God forgive us, Nora, we're after forgetting his bit of bread.
[She comes over to the fire.]
NORA.
And it's destroyed he'll be going till dark night, and he after eating nothing since the sun went up.
CATHLEEN.
Turning the cake out of the oven.—It's destroyed he'll be, surely. There's no sense left on any person in a house where an old woman will be talking for ever.
[Maurya sways herself on her stool.]
CATHLEEN.
Cutting off some of the bread and rolling it in a cloth; to Maurya.—Let you go down now to the spring well and give him this and he passing. You'll see him then and the dark word will be broken, and you can say "God speed you," the way he'll be easy in his mind.
MAURYA.
Taking the bread.—Will I be in it as soon as himself?
CATHLEEN.
If you go now quickly.
MAURYA.
Standing up unsteadily.—It's hard set I am to walk.
CATHLEEN.
Looking at her anxiously.—Give her the stick, Nora, or maybe she'll slip on the big stones.
NORA.
What stick?
CATHLEEN.
The stick Michael brought from Connemara.
MAURYA.
Taking a stick Nora gives her.—In the big world the old people do be leaving things after them for their sons and children, but in this place it is the young men do be leaving things behind for them that do be old.
[She goes out slowly. Nora goes over to the ladder.]
CATHLEEN.
Wait, Nora, maybe she'd turn back quickly. She's that sorry, God help her, you wouldn't know the thing she'd do.
NORA.
Is she gone round by the bush?
CATHLEEN.
Looking out.—She's gone now. Throw it down quickly, for the Lord knows when she'll be out of it again.
NORA.
Getting the bundle from the loft.—The young priest said he'd be passing to-morrow, and we might go down and speak to him below if it's Michael's they are surely.
CATHLEEN.
Taking the bundle.—Did he say what way they were found?

NORA.
Coming down.—"There were two men," says he, "and they rowing round with poteen before the cocks crowed, and the oar of one of them caught the body, and they passing the black cliffs of the north."
CATHLEEN.
Trying to open the bundle.—Give me a knife, Nora, the string's perished with the salt water, and there's a black knot on it you wouldn't loosen in a week.
NORA.
Giving her a knife.—I've heard tell it was a long way to Donegal.
CATHLEEN.
Cutting the string.—It is surely. There was a man in here a while ago—the man sold us that knife—and he said if you set off walking from the rocks beyond, it would be seven days you'd be in Donegal.
NORA.
And what time would a man take, and he floating?
[Cathleen opens the bundle and takes out a bit of a stocking. They look at them eagerly.]
CATHLEEN.
In a low voice.—The Lord spare us, Nora! isn't it a queer hard thing to say if it's his they are surely?
NORA.
I'll get his shirt off the hook the way we can put the one flannel on the other [she looks through some clothes hanging in the corner.] It's not with them, Cathleen, and where will it be?
CATHLEEN.
I'm thinking Bartley put it on him in the morning, for his own shirt was heavy with the salt in it [pointing to the corner]. There's a bit of a sleeve was of the same stuff. Give me that and it will do.
[Nora brings it to her and they compare the flannel.]
CATHLEEN.
It's the same stuff, Nora; but if it is itself aren't there great rolls of it in the shops of Galway, and isn't it many another man may have a shirt of it as well as Michael himself?
NORA.
Who has taken up the stocking and counted the stitches, crying out.—It's Michael, Cathleen, it's Michael; God spare his soul, and what will herself say when she hears this story, and Bartley on the sea?
CATHLEEN.
Taking the stocking.—It's a plain stocking.
NORA.
It's the second one of the third pair I knitted, and I put up three score stitches, and I dropped four of them.
CATHLEEN.
Counts the stitches.—It's that number is in it [crying out.] Ah, Nora, isn't it a bitter thing to think of him floating that way to the far north, and no one to keen him but the black hags that do be flying on the sea?

NORA.
Swinging herself round, and throwing out her arms on the clothes.—And isn't it a pitiful thing when there is nothing left of a man who was a great rower and fisher, but a bit of an old shirt and a plain stocking?
CATHLEEN.
After an instant.—Tell me is herself coming, Nora? I hear a little sound on the path.
NORA.
Looking out.—She is, Cathleen. She's coming up to the door.
CATHLEEN.
Put these things away before she'll come in. Maybe it's easier she'll be after giving her blessing to Bartley, and we won't let on we've heard anything the time he's on the sea.
NORA.
Helping Cathleen to close the bundle.—We'll put them here in the corner.
[They put them into a hole in the chimney corner. Cathleen goes back to the spinning-wheel.]
NORA.
Will she see it was crying I was?
CATHLEEN.
Keep your back to the door the way the light'll not be on you.
[Nora sits down at the chimney corner, with her back to the door. Maurya comes in very slowly, without looking at the girls, and goes over to her stool at the other side of the fire. The cloth with the bread is still in her hand. The girls look at each other, and Nora points to the bundle of bread.]
CATHLEEN.
After spinning for a moment.—You didn't give him his bit of bread?
[Maurya begins to keen softly, without turning round.]
CATHLEEN.
Did you see him riding down?
[Maurya goes on keening.]
CATHLEEN.
A little impatiently.—God forgive you; isn't it a better thing to raise your voice and tell what you seen, than to be making lamentation for a thing that's done? Did you see Bartley, I'm saying to you?
MAURYA.
With a weak voice.—My heart's broken from this day.
CATHLEEN.
As before.—Did you see Bartley?
MAURYA.
I seen the fearfulest thing.
CATHLEEN.
Leaves her wheel and looks out.—God forgive you; he's riding the mare now over the green head, and the gray pony behind him.
MAURYA.
Starts, so that her shawl falls back from her head and shows her white tossed hair. With a frightened voice.—The gray pony behind him.

CATHLEEN.
Coming to the fire.—What is it ails you, at all?
MAURYA.
Speaking very slowly.—I've seen the fearfulest thing any person has seen, since the day Bride Dara seen the dead man with the child in his arms.
CATHLEEN AND NORA.
Uah.
[They crouch down in front of the old woman at the fire.]
NORA.
Tell us what it is you seen.
MAURYA.
I went down to the spring well, and I stood there saying a prayer to myself. Then Bartley came along, and he riding on the red mare with the gray pony behind him [she puts up her hands, as if to hide something from her eyes.] The Son of God spare us, Nora!
CATHLEEN.
What is it you seen.
MAURYA.
I seen Michael himself.
CATHLEEN.
Speaking softly.—You did not, mother; it wasn't Michael you seen, for his body is after being found in the far north, and he's got a clean burial by the grace of God.
MAURYA.
A little defiantly.—I'm after seeing him this day, and he riding and galloping. Bartley came first on the red mare; and I tried to say "God speed you," but something choked the words in my throat. He went by quickly; and "the blessing of God on you," says he, and I could say nothing. I looked up then, and I crying, at the gray pony, and there was Michael upon it—with fine clothes on him, and new shoes on his feet.
CATHLEEN.
Begins to keen.—It's destroyed we are from this day. It's destroyed, surely.
NORA.
Didn't the young priest say the Almighty God wouldn't leave her destitute with no son living?
MAURYA.
In a low voice, but clearly.—It's little the like of him knows of the sea. . . . Bartley will be lost now, and let you call in Eamon and make me a good coffin out of the white boards, for I won't live after them. I've had a husband, and a husband's father, and six sons in this house—six fine men, though it was a hard birth I had with every one of them and they coming to the world—and some of them were found and some of them were not found, but they're gone now the lot of them. . . There were Stephen, and Shawn, were lost in the great wind, and found after in the Bay of Gregory of the Golden Mouth, and carried up the two of them on the one plank, and in by that door.
[She pauses for a moment, the girls start as if they heard something through the door that is half open behind them.]

NORA.
In a whisper.—Did you hear that, Cathleen? Did you hear a noise in the north-east?
CATHLEEN.
In a whisper.—There's some one after crying out by the seashore.
MAURYA.
Continues without hearing anything.—There was Sheamus and his father, and his own father again, were lost in a dark night, and not a stick or sign was seen of them when the sun went up. There was Patch after was drowned out of a curagh that turned over. I was sitting here with Bartley, and he a baby, lying on my two knees, and I seen two women, and three women, and four women coming in, and they crossing themselves, and not saying a word. I looked out then, and there were men coming after them, and they holding a thing in the half of a red sail, and water dripping out of it—it was a dry day, Nora—and leaving a track to the door.
[She pauses again with her hand stretched out towards the door. It opens softly and old women begin to come in, crossing themselves on the threshold, and kneeling down in front of the stage with red petticoats over their heads.]
MAURYA.
Half in a dream, to Cathleen.—Is it Patch, or Michael, or what is it at all?
CATHLEEN.
Michael is after being found in the far north, and when he is found there how could he be here in this place?
MAURYA.
There does be a power of young men floating round in the sea, and what way would they know if it was Michael they had, or another man like him, for when a man is nine days in the sea, and the wind blowing, it's hard set his own mother would be to say what man was it.
CATHLEEN.
It's Michael, God spare him, for they're after sending us a bit of his clothes from the far north.
[She reaches out and hands Maurya the clothes that belonged to Michael. Maurya stands up slowly, and takes them into her hands. Nora looks out.]
NORA.
They're carrying a thing among them and there's water dripping out of it and leaving a track by the big stones.
CATHLEEN.
In a whisper to the women who have come in.—Is it Bartley it is?
ONE OF THE WOMEN.
It is surely, God rest his soul.
[Two younger women come in and pull out the table. Then men carry in the body of Bartley, laid on a plank, with a bit of a sail over it, and lay it on the table.]
CATHLEEN.
To the women, as they are doing so.—What way was he drowned?
ONE OF THE WOMEN.
The gray pony knocked him into the sea, and he was washed out where there is a great surf on the white rocks.

[Maurya has gone over and knelt down at the head of the table. The women are keening softly and swaying themselves with a slow movement. Cathleen and Nora kneel at the other end of the table. The men kneel near the door.]

MAURYA.

Raising her head and speaking as if she did not see the people around her.—They're all gone now, and there isn't anything more the sea can do to me.... I'll have no call now to be up crying and praying when the wind breaks from the south, and you can hear the surf is in the east, and the surf is in the west, making a great stir with the two noises, and they hitting one on the other. I'll have no call now to be going down and getting Holy Water in the dark nights after Samhain, and I won't care what way the sea is when the other women will be keening. [To Nora]. Give me the Holy Water, Nora, there's a small sup still on the dresser.

[Nora gives it to her.]

MAURYA.

Drops Michael's clothes across Bartley's feet, and sprinkles the Holy Water over him.—It isn't that I haven't prayed for you, Bartley, to the Almighty God. It isn't that I haven't said prayers in the dark night till you wouldn't know what I'ld be saying; but it's a great rest I'll have now, and it's time surely. It's a great rest I'll have now, and great sleeping in the long nights after Samhain, if it's only a bit of wet flour we do have to eat, and maybe a fish that would be stinking.

[She kneels down again, crossing herself, and saying prayers under her breath.]

CATHLEEN.

To an old man.—Maybe yourself and Eamon would make a coffin when the sun rises. We have fine white boards herself bought, God help her, thinking Michael would be found, and I have a new cake you can eat while you'll be working.

THE OLD MAN.

Looking at the boards.—Are there nails with them?

CATHLEEN.

There are not, Colum; we didn't think of the nails.

ANOTHER MAN.

It's a great wonder she wouldn't think of the nails, and all the coffins she's seen made already.

CATHLEEN.

It's getting old she is, and broken.

[Maurya stands up again very slowly and spreads out the pieces of Michael's clothes beside the body, sprinkling them with the last of the Holy Water.]

NORA.

In a whisper to Cathleen.—She's quiet now and easy; but the day Michael was drowned you could hear her crying out from this to the spring well. It's fonder she was of Michael, and would any one have thought that?

CATHLEEN.

Slowly and clearly.—An old woman will be soon tired with anything she will do, and isn't it nine days herself is after crying and keening, and making great sorrow in the house?

MAURYA.

Puts the empty cup mouth downwards on the table, and lays her hands together on Bartley's

feet.—They're all together this time, and the end is come. May the Almighty God have mercy on Bartley's soul, and on Michael's soul, and on the souls of Sheamus and Patch, and Stephen and Shawn [bending her head]; and may He have mercy on my soul, Nora, and on the soul of every one is left living in the world.
[She pauses, and the keen rises a little more loudly from the women, then sinks away.]
MAURYA.
Continuing.—Michael has a clean burial in the far north, by the grace of the Almighty God. Bartley will have a fine coffin out of the white boards, and a deep grave surely. What more can we want than that? No man at all can be living for ever, and we must be satisfied.
[She kneels down again and the curtain falls slowly.]

12.5 SUMMARY OF RIDERS TO THE SEA

The play opens in the humble cottage of **Maurya**, an elderly woman who lives with her two daughters, **Cathleen** and **Nora**, and her son **Bartley**. The family is struggling with the aftermath of repeated tragedies caused by the sea. Maurya has already lost her husband and several sons to the treacherous waves, and the play begins with the news that her son Bartley is preparing to sail out to sea once again, despite the dangers.

Maurya, deeply fearful for her remaining son's safety, pleads with Bartley not to go, but he is determined to travel to the mainland to sell horses in order to support the family. As he prepares to leave, Maurya experiences a series of premonitions and intense moments of grief, foretelling yet another loss.

The drama unfolds as Cathleen and Nora discover that Bartley's body has been found washed up on the shore. The sea, which has taken so much from Maurya, has claimed her last son. In the final moments of the play, Maurya, though devastated, achieves a moment of profound understanding and acceptance. She has lost all of her children to the sea, but she also reaches a sense of peace, as she expresses that the sea can now claim no more of her.

The play ends with Maurya's quiet resignation to the power of nature and fate, highlighting the cyclical and relentless challenges faced by those who live by the sea.

Themes:

- **Fate and Death**: The play explores the inevitability of death, particularly for those who live in a dangerous and unforgiving environment. The sea symbolizes both life and death, as it provides sustenance but also takes away loved ones.
- **Suffering and Resilience**: Maurya's journey throughout the play is one of immense suffering, but she ultimately comes to a form of emotional and spiritual resilience.
- **The Power of Nature**: The sea is depicted as a powerful, uncontrollable force that dictates the lives of the people who depend on it for survival. It also symbolizes the larger forces of fate and destiny that govern human existence.

"Riders to the Sea" is a poignant and powerful exploration of the human struggle against the forces of nature and the inevitability of loss. Through its minimalistic structure and evocative language, Synge creates a deeply moving and tragic portrait of a mother's grief and acceptance.

12.6 LET US SUM UP

Riders to the Sea is a one-act tragedy that revolves around the tragic loss of life in a small fishing village on the west coast of Ireland. The play focuses on Maurya, an elderly mother, who has already lost her husband and several sons to the unforgiving sea. As the play unfolds, Maurya's last surviving son, Michael, is reported dead, having drowned at sea like his brothers before him. The news deepens her grief and resignation, marking the culmination of her lifelong struggle with the sea and the deaths it brings.

At its core, Riders to the Sea examines themes of fate, loss, and the inevitable power of nature. Maurya's journey through grief and her eventual acceptance of death as an unchangeable part of life form the emotional heart of the play. Synge highlights the harshness of the sea as a force that controls the lives of the islanders, and the characters' helplessness in the face of this uncontrollable power.

Through Maurya's final words, "They're all gone now, and there isn't anything more to be done," Synge emphasizes the inevitability of death and the cyclical nature of life and loss. Maurya, having lost all her sons, ultimately finds solace in the belief that they are now at peace, and she is resigned to the fact that death is a part of the human experience.

Synge's use of language, rich with poetic and rhythmic qualities, enhances the tragic tone of the play. The setting, a desolate island with a constant connection to the sea, mirrors the characters' lives, marked by hardship and a constant confrontation with mortality. The play is a reflection on human endurance and resilience in the face of uncontrollable forces, underscoring themes of grief, family, and the power of nature.

Ultimately, Riders to the Sea is a powerful exploration of the human condition, capturing the emotional depth of loss and the struggle to accept the inevitable in a world dominated by nature's forces. It is considered one of Synge's most poignant works, combining the beauty of the Irish landscape with the deep emotional turmoil of its characters.

12.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives:

1. To understand the central themes of Riders to the Sea such as loss, fate, and the struggle between humans and nature.
2. To analyze the characters, particularly Maurya, and their emotional journeys.

3. To examine the use of language and setting in reinforcing the themes and tone of the play.
4. To explore the cultural and historical context of the play, specifically the role of the sea in Irish life.
5. To understand how Synge uses symbolism and dramatic elements to convey the inevitability of death.

Key Themes:

- **The Power of the Sea:** The sea represents both life and death, as the source of livelihood for the islanders but also the cause of numerous deaths.
- **Grief and Loss:** Maurya's journey through the loss of her sons symbolizes the universal experience of grief.
- **Fate and Resignation:** The play explores the inevitability of death and how the characters come to accept their fate.
- **Religion and Afterlife:** Maurya's belief in the afterlife and peace for her sons is central to her acceptance of their deaths.

Activity 1: Character Analysis - Maurya's Emotional Journey

1. **Objective:** Students will understand and analyze Maurya's character and her emotional journey throughout the play.
2. **Instructions:**
    - Break the class into small groups.
    - Each group will focus on one key moment in Maurya's journey (e.g., when she hears of Michael's death, her conversation with the women, her final speech).
    - Have students discuss the following:
        - How does Maurya react to each loss?
        - What is the turning point in her emotional journey?
        - How does Maurya's relationship with death evolve throughout the play?
        - What does her final acceptance of death signify?
    - After discussion, each group will present their analysis to the class.

Activity 2: Symbolism of the Sea

1. **Objective:** Students will analyze the symbolic role of the sea in the play and its connection to the themes of loss and fate.
2. **Instructions:**
    - Ask students to think about how the sea is portrayed in the play. Is it a nurturing or destructive force?
    - Discuss the symbolism of the sea in relation to the characters and the community.
    - Have students write a short essay or paragraph answering the following questions:
        - What role does the sea play in the lives of the characters in Riders to the Sea?
        - How does the sea reflect the characters' fates and emotions?

- Can the sea be seen as a metaphor for something greater, such as nature's power or the inevitability of death?

Activity 3: Dramatic Performance - The Final Scene

1. **Objective:** Students will perform the final scene of the play, focusing on Maurya's acceptance of the loss of her sons and her resignation to fate.
2. **Instructions:**
    - Divide the class into small groups, assigning each group a different character from the final scene.
    - Have students rehearse the scene, paying particular attention to the emotional intensity of Maurya's final speech.
    - After rehearsal, allow each group to perform their version of the scene for the class.
    - After the performances, engage the class in a discussion of the following:
        - How does Maurya's language reflect her acceptance of fate?
        - What dramatic elements (tone, gestures, pacing) were used to convey Maurya's emotions?
        - How does the play's tragic ending affect the audience?

Activity 4: Setting and Atmosphere

1. **Objective:** Students will explore the role of the play's setting in shaping the mood and atmosphere of the play.
2. **Instructions:**
    - Ask students to imagine the setting of the play. What does the bleak, isolated environment of the island convey about the lives of the characters?
    - In small groups, have students brainstorm how Synge uses the setting to enhance the play's themes. Consider:
        - The isolation of the island.
        - The omnipresence of the sea.
        - The use of simple, sparse dialogue.
    - Each group will create a visual representation (a drawing, diagram, or mood board) that reflects the setting and its thematic importance.
    - Have students present their representations and discuss how the setting contributes to the play's overall tone.

Discussion Questions:

1. How does Maurya's perception of the sea change over the course of the play?
2. What does Maurya's final speech reveal about her character and her view of death?
3. How does the playwright use the sea as a symbol of both life and death?
4. What is the significance of the women's role in the play? How do they represent the community's collective grief and survival?
5. How might the themes of Riders to the Sea resonate with contemporary audiences, even though it is set in the past?

Homework/Extension Activities:

1. **Essay Writing:** Students can write an essay on how Riders to the Sea addresses universal themes such as loss, fate, and the relationship between humans and nature. Students should refer to specific scenes or quotes to support their analysis.
2. **Research Project:** Have students research the history and significance of the Irish fishing communities in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. How did the sea shape these communities, and how might Synge's own experiences influence the portrayal of the sea in the play?

Conclusion:

By engaging in these activities, students will gain a deeper understanding of the key themes in Riders to the Sea, the emotional complexity of the characters, and Synge's use of symbolism and setting. The play's tragic exploration of loss and the inevitability of death, combined with the poetic dialogue, provides a rich foundation for both critical thinking and creative expression.

12.8 GLOSSARY

Here is a glossary of some key terms and expressions found in Riders to the Sea, which may help clarify the language and context of the play:

1. Abbey (n.)

- **Definition:** A religious house or monastery. In the play, it may refer to a religious space or building.
- **Example:** "The women are waiting outside the abbey to hear news of their loved ones."

2. Bally (n.)

- **Definition:** A term from Irish Gaelic meaning a town or settlement.
- **Example:** "He came from Bally."

3. Grief (n.)

- **Definition:** Deep sorrow, especially that caused by someone's death.
- **Example:** Maurya's grief is central to the play's emotional tone.

4. Loom (n.)

- **Definition:** A device used to weave thread into fabric.
- **Example:** "The loom in the corner is where Nora sits to work."

5. Oars (n.)

- **Definition:** Long, slender poles used to row a boat.
- **Example:** "The men are rowing with oars to reach the shore."

6. Famine (n.)

- **Definition:** Extreme scarcity of food, leading to hunger and starvation.
- **Example:** "The famine has taken its toll on the village."

7. Shroud (n.)

- **Definition:** A cloth used to wrap a dead body, often before burial.
- **Example:** "The body was wrapped in a shroud before being laid to rest."

8. "The Riders to the Sea" (n.)
- **Definition:** This phrase refers to the sea and the men who die at sea. It represents the constant threat and danger of the sea for the fishermen and their families.
- **Example:** "Maurya sees the riders of the sea taking her sons."

9. Curragh (n.)
- **Definition:** A type of traditional Irish fishing boat made of wickerwork and covered with canvas or leather.
- **Example:** "The men sailed out in a curragh, hoping to catch fish."

10. Tithe (n.)
- **Definition:** A tax, usually one-tenth of income, historically paid to the church.
- **Example:** "The villagers must pay their tithe to the church."

11. Wraith (n.)
- **Definition:** A ghost or spirit, often seen as a precursor to death.
- **Example:** "Maurya believes she has seen the wraith of her dead son."

12. Keening (n.)
- **Definition:** A traditional Irish mournful wail or lament, usually performed by women to express grief at a death.
- **Example:** "The sound of keening echoes through the village as the women mourn."

13. Tending (v.)
- **Definition:** To look after or care for something.
- **Example:** "She spends her days tending the household, waiting for her sons to return."

14. Purgatory (n.)
- **Definition:** In Catholic belief, a state of purification or temporary punishment for souls who are not yet ready to enter heaven.
- **Example:** "Maurya believes that her sons are in purgatory."

15. Drowned (adj.)
- **Definition:** Having died by suffocation due to being submerged in water.
- **Example:** "Michael has drowned, just like his brothers before him."

16. Spinning (v.)
- **Definition:** The act of making thread or yarn by twisting fibers.
- **Example:** "The women spin thread as they wait for news."

17. Prophet (n.)
- **Definition:** A person who is believed to be able to speak for God or foretell the future.
- **Example:** "Maurya is like a prophet, knowing her fate is tied to the sea."

18. Harsh (adj.)
- **Definition:** Severe or cruel, often used to describe conditions or environments.
- **Example:** "The harsh weather conditions make life on the island difficult."

19. Weary (adj.)
- **Definition:** Feeling or showing tiredness from physical or mental exertion.
- **Example:** "Maurya is weary after a lifetime of loss."

20. "The Sea is a Bitter Place" (expression)
- **Definition:** A reflection of the central theme of the play: the sea is both a source of livelihood and a cause of death for the characters.

- **Example:** "The women in the play often refer to the sea as a bitter place because it has taken away so much from them."

Important Terms and Context:

- **Island Life:** The play is set on the Aran Islands, off the west coast of Ireland, where the sea is central to the community's way of life. The harsh conditions of the sea are a backdrop for much of the characters' struggles.
- **Religious Context:** The characters in Riders to the Sea often refer to Catholic beliefs, including references to purgatory and divine will, which influence their worldview on fate and death.
- **Traditional Roles:** The play highlights the traditional roles of women, such as caring for the home and mourning the dead, while also subtly addressing the limitations these roles impose on them.

This glossary helps clarify some of the language and terms used in Riders to the Sea and provides insight into the cultural and religious backdrop of the play. Understanding these terms will deepen students' engagement with Synge's exploration of life on the Irish islands and the emotional weight of the characters' experiences.

12.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of Riders to the Sea by John Millington Synge

1. **Themes of Loss and Fate:**
    - How does Maurya's journey through grief represent the larger theme of loss in the play?
    - What role does fate play in the lives of the characters? How do the characters react to the inevitability of death, especially in relation to the sea?
2. **The Sea as a Character:**
    - How does the sea function as a character in the play? In what ways does it represent both life and death?
    - Do you think the sea is portrayed as a symbol of natural forces beyond human control, or as something more personal in its destruction of the characters' lives?
3. **Role of Women:**
    - What is the significance of the female characters in the play, especially Maurya? How do they cope with grief and loss differently from the men in the play?
    - Discuss the importance of community and the role of women in supporting each other through tragedy.
4. **Maurya's Final Acceptance:**
    - In Maurya's final speech, she says, "They're all gone now, and there isn't anything more to be done." What does this indicate about her character's acceptance of death?
    - How does Maurya's final acceptance of her sons' deaths reflect her understanding of the cyclical nature of life and death?

5. **Symbolism in the Play:**
    - What is the significance of the recurring references to the sea, especially in the context of the islanders' lives? How does Synge use symbolism to enhance the themes of the play?
    - What other symbols can you identify in the play (e.g., the loom, the wraith)? How do these symbols contribute to the overall meaning of the story?
6. **Religious Beliefs and Afterlife:**
    - How does religion shape Maurya's understanding of life and death in the play?
    - Do you think the belief in an afterlife or purgatory provides Maurya with comfort, or does it deepen her sorrow?
7. **Tragic Heroism:**
    - Is Maurya a tragic hero in the classical sense? Why or why not? What makes her struggle against the sea and her own grief both heroic and tragic?
    - How does the play's tragedy differ from other well-known tragedies, and what makes it uniquely tied to the Irish setting?
8. **The Impact of Isolation:**
    - How does the isolation of the island contribute to the play's sense of inevitability and despair? Would Maurya's grief be different if she lived in a more populated area?
    - In what ways does the setting amplify the themes of loneliness and the struggle against nature?
9. **Character Relationships:**
    - Discuss the relationship between Maurya and her surviving children, especially Cathleen and Nora. How do they try to support their mother, and how are they affected by the tragedies?
    - How do the other characters' responses to Michael's death reflect different ways people deal with grief?
10. **The Play's Ending:**
    - How does the ending of Riders to the Sea affect you emotionally? Does it offer a sense of resolution or closure, or is it more open-ended?
    - How does the final image of Maurya's acceptance of her fate impact the overall message of the play?
11. **Nature vs. Human Struggle:**
    - In Riders to the Sea, the sea is an unstoppable, powerful force. How does Synge illustrate the contrast between human beings' attempts to survive and the overwhelming power of nature?
    - Can the sea be seen as a metaphor for other larger forces, such as fate, destiny, or societal expectations?
12. **The Play's Relevance Today:**
    - Although set in an Irish fishing village, what universal themes in Riders to the Sea can be applied to contemporary society?
    - How do the themes of nature, death, and grief continue to resonate with audiences today, even in modern settings?

These questions encourage in-depth analysis and discussion of the characters, themes, and symbols within Riders to the Sea. They aim to promote a deeper understanding of the play's portrayal of grief, fate, and the unrelenting forces of nature.

12.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Kitishat, A. R. (2017). Riders to the Sea between regionalism and universality: A cultural perspective. Theory and Practice in Language Studies, 9(3), 301-307.
2. Vural, K. (2017). Agentic power of the sea in John Millington Synge's Riders to the Sea. idil, 6(35), 1903-1913.
3. Ghosal, S. (2020). An ecocritical study of J.M. Synge's Riders to the Sea and the wilderness of nature. Brainwave, 1(2), 95-98.
4. Gürçay, S. (2022). Beyond gender division: The militarization of feminism in George Bernard Shaw's Saint Joan. ResearchGate.

Suggested Books

1. Synge, J. M. (2003). Riders to the Sea (D. G. Johnson, Ed.). Oxford University Press.
2. Kiberd, D. (2005). The Irish Writer and the World. Cambridge University Press.
3. Brady, C. (2010). Synge and the Rise of Irish Drama. Palgrave Macmillan.
4. Parker, R. (2011). The Plays of John Millington Synge. Methuen Drama.
5. Smyth, J. (2003). Irish Drama: A Critical Introduction. Syracuse University Press.
6. Quinn, D. (2012). The Theatre of John Millington Synge: A Study of His Plays. Routledge.
7. Foley, D. (2014). The Sea in Irish Literature and the Arts. Cambridge University Press.
8. McDonald, R. (2009). The Cambridge Companion to the Irish Novel. Cambridge University Press.

UNIT 13
THE MIRACLE MERCHANT

Structure:

13.1 INTRODUCTION

The Miracle Merchant is a short story written by H.H. Munro, better known by his pen name, Saki. First published in 1911, this story is a satirical and humorous take on themes of religion, human nature, and the power of belief. In typical Saki fashion, The Miracle Merchant exposes the absurdities of human behavior and the often-ironic situations people find themselves in.

The story centers on a self-proclaimed "miracle merchant" who is a conman exploiting people's gullibility for financial gain. The merchant's supposed miracles are framed within a fictional or exaggerated context, showcasing how easily people can be manipulated by those who claim to possess supernatural powers or divine favor. Through this central character, Saki critiques the human tendency to blindly follow charismatic figures or make desperate attempts to find meaning through miraculous solutions.

Set in an environment where social classes are sharply divided, the characters in The Miracle Merchant are often depicted as naïve or self-important, adding to the dark humor that runs through the story. Saki employs his characteristic wit and sharp social commentary to mock both the merchant and his unsuspecting clientele.

Though The Miracle Merchant touches upon serious issues such as the commercialization of spirituality and the manipulation of vulnerable people, it is also a reflection of Saki's overall style—humorous, clever, and full of biting irony. The story is an excellent example of his ability to blend satire and dark comedy to explore human weaknesses and the absurdities of social norms.

Saki's The Miracle Merchant encourages readers to reflect on the ease with which people can be deceived, while also humorously critiquing society's tendency to seek out miracles or divine intervention in times of uncertainty.

13.2 OBJECTIVE

After reading this unit you will be able to

1. Understand the themes of faith, morality, and human nature explored in The Miracle Merchant.
2. Understand the role of miracles and religious beliefs in shaping the characters' actions and decisions.
3. Understand the conflict between skepticism and belief as a central driving force in the narrative.
4. Understand the use of dramatic irony and character development to enhance the play's emotional impact.
5. Understand how the play critiques the concept of faith and its manipulation for personal gain.

13.3 BIOGRAPHY OF H.H. MUNRO

H.H. Munro (December 18, 1870 – November 13, 1916), better known by his pen name **Saki**, was a British author and playwright renowned for his witty, darkly humorous, and satirical short stories. His works often feature biting social commentary and are characterized by a unique blend of irony, cynicism, and absurdity. Saki is considered one of the masters of the short story and is best remembered for his clever, often macabre tales, many of which explore the absurdities of Edwardian society.

Early Life and Education

H.H. Munro was born in Akyab (now Sittwe), Burma (now Myanmar), to Charles Augustus Munro, a civil servant, and his wife, Mary. The Munro family was stationed in Burma due to Charles's work with the colonial administration. H.H. Munro, who would later adopt the pen name "Saki," spent his early years in Burma but was sent back to England with his older brother and sister after the death of their mother in 1872. His father also died when he was very young, and Saki and his siblings were raised by their strict and authoritarian aunts.

Munro was educated at a number of schools, including a private school in London and the Westminster School, where he showed early promise as a writer. His rebellious and independent nature made him a difficult student, and his relationship with his aunts was strained, which later influenced the cynical tone of his writing.

Early Career and Work in Journalism

After completing his education, Munro worked in various capacities, including as a civil servant in Burma, but his true passion lay in writing. He returned to England in 1896 and began working as a journalist, contributing to several newspapers, including The Westminster Gazette and The Morning Post. His journalistic career provided him with a platform to develop his writing skills and hone his unique voice.

During this period, he began using the pen name "Saki," which was inspired by the Persian poet Omar Khayyam's "Saki," meaning "cupbearer" or "wine pourer," symbolizing a spirit of free-spirited enjoyment. Munro's satirical writing style and irreverent tone fit well with the persona he created as "Saki."

Writing Career and Short Stories

Saki is best known for his short stories, which often involve surprise endings, wit, and a darkly humorous outlook on life. His stories typically feature strong, eccentric characters, often drawn from the upper class of Edwardian society. They frequently involve biting social criticism and expose the hypocrisy, silliness, and absurdity of contemporary British society.

Some of Saki's best-known short stories include The Open Window (1914), The Interlopers (1919), The Schartz-Metterklume Method (1907), and The Unrest-Cure (1908). In these stories, Munro skillfully depicts social conventions and the limitations they place on individuals. His tales often end with ironic twists, revealing the darker sides of human nature.

Many of Saki's works feature protagonists who are trapped or constrained by societal expectations. He frequently mocked the mannered and refined behavior of the Edwardian upper class, but his writing also often exposed the pretensions and weaknesses of the social elite.

In addition to his short stories, Saki wrote novels, plays, and essays. His novel The Rise of the Russian Empire (1916), was a satirical work focusing on Russian politics, but his greatest fame remained with his short stories. His collections of short stories, such as The Chronicles of Clovis (1911) and The Toys of Peace (1919), further cemented his reputation as a master of the genre.

Personal Life

Munro's personal life was somewhat private, and he never married. He was known to be a solitary and somewhat aloof figure, though he had a circle of friends and acquaintances, including notable figures of the Edwardian literary and intellectual circles. His experiences with his overbearing aunts shaped much of his later character, which was reflected in the sharp, sometimes scornful, humor in his stories.

Munro was known to be somewhat unconventional, and his writing frequently explored themes of rebellion and the absurdity of societal norms. Despite being born into a colonial family, he had little interest in the British Empire and was instead deeply affected by his own experiences as a child and young man in Burma, which he later explored through his writing.

World War I and Death

With the outbreak of World War I in 1914, Saki, despite his age and frail health, enlisted in the British Army. He served as a lieutenant with the Lancashire Fusiliers, and his experiences in the trenches during the war had a profound impact on him.

On November 13, 1916, Saki was killed during the Battle of the Ancre in France, a part of the larger Battle of the Somme. He was shot by a German sniper while walking in the trenches. His death at the age of 45 marked the untimely end of a promising career.

Legacy

Though Saki's life was short, his influence on the short story genre and on British literature is lasting. His sharp wit, inventive use of irony, and dark humor make his work highly regarded even today. He was a key figure in the Edwardian literary world, and his ability to satirize both the British aristocracy and the society they dominated has continued to resonate with readers.

Saki's works have been adapted for radio, television, and film, and his stories are still widely read and studied. His legacy endures as one of the finest satirists of the early 20th century, and his distinctive blend of dark humor and social critique remains relevant for modern readers.

13.4 THE MIRACLE MERCHANT

H. H. Munro has always been better known as 'Saki.' He is recognized as a reputed short story writer. In this context he is compared with O Henry and Maupassant. He is a well-known British humorist and satirist. As a creative writer he discovered his genius in his short stories. The Miracle Merchant is a very successful dramatization of his popular short story named The Hen.

The present one act play has a very suitable title. Here one of the characters of the play devises the miracle. He is Louis Courset. He prepares a plot to compel Jane to leave Mrs. Beau whistle's house. Thus the title suits to the major theme of the play.

The Miracle Merchant is full of irony and humour. Here the playwright has presented three major characters. They are Mrs. Beau whistle, Louis Courset and Jane Martlet. Mrs. Beau whistle is an elderly lady. She leads a luxurious life. She is unwilling to pamper her nephew, Louis. He is a witty young man. He always asks her for money. But she is not ready for that. Jane Martlet is a guest in the house of Mrs. Beau whistle. She is her niece.

Louis comes to know that Dora is coming to live with Mrs. Beau whistle. He gets an opportunity to cheat money from her aunt. He tells her about their quarrel of hen to her. He says that they are sworn enemies of each other. They can't live under the same roof. To avoid this situation Mrs. Beau whistle requests Louis to devise some miracle. In return she would

give him twenty pounds. Louis starts his action. He sows the seeds of fear in Jane's mind. For his conspiracy he uses Sturridge. He is the servant of Mrs. Beau whistle. Jane becomes an easy victim of his trick. In panic she leaves the house of Mrs. Beau whistle. But in the meantime Mrs. Beau whistle informs that Dora is not coming on the fixed date. The drama ends here.

Thus this is a beautiful one-act play. It is full of humour and irony. Here great ingenuity has been displayed in turning a trifle into a drama of human ironies and imperfections. The characters like Louis and Jane have their limitations. Saki's gift of wit and humour enlivens the irony of human action.

13.5 SUMMARY OF THE MIRACLE MERCHANT

The story is set in a fictional town where a conman known as **Miracle Merchant** is trying to swindle the townspeople with false promises of miraculous cures. The Miracle Merchant is a master of trickery and uses his supposed powers to perform "miracles" that capture the townspeople’s attention and exploit their gullibility. He sets himself up as a healer who can cure illnesses, offer blessings, and solve any problems for a fee.

The story follows a young man named **Gerald** who, after hearing about the Miracle Merchant’s supposed powers, decides to visit him. Gerald’s sister, **Tina**, is in poor health, and he hopes that the Miracle Merchant will be able to cure her. Gerald, though skeptical, decides to take part in the charade after being persuaded by the promise of a miracle.

The Miracle Merchant, who is more interested in making money than actually helping people, gives Gerald a "miracle" remedy, which is nothing more than a series of empty promises. In a series of manipulative and ironic exchanges, the Miracle Merchant convinces Gerald and the townspeople that he is indeed capable of performing supernatural feats. However, as the story unfolds, it becomes clear that the so-called miracles are nothing but clever deceptions designed to exploit the vulnerable.

In the end, Tina's health remains unchanged, and Gerald comes to the realization that the Miracle Merchant was nothing more than a fraud. However, by then, the town is so caught up in the idea of miracles that they continue to follow him. The story ends with an ironic twist, leaving the reader to reflect on the absurdity of blindly following false prophets and the human tendency to place faith in deception.

Themes:

- **Deception and Exploitation**: The story critiques how people are easily deceived by false promises, especially when they are desperate.
- **Human Gullibility**: It highlights the human tendency to believe in the miraculous or the extraordinary, often without questioning the motives behind those who claim to have such powers.

- **Satire and Irony**: Saki uses irony and satire to mock the gullibility of society, exposing how people can be manipulated by conmen pretending to be miracle workers.

Overall, "The Miracle Merchant" is a biting commentary on human nature, particularly the willingness of people to believe in miracles without questioning the truth behind them.

13.6 LET US SUM UP

H.H. Munro's (Saki's) The Miracle Merchant is a satirical short story that highlights the absurdity of human gullibility and the exploitation of spirituality for personal gain. The story revolves around a self-styled "miracle merchant," who deceives people into believing he can provide miraculous solutions to their problems. Through this clever and darkly humorous narrative, Saki critiques society's readiness to believe in the supernatural and its tendency to fall prey to charlatans.

The "miracle merchant" represents the archetype of the opportunist who takes advantage of the desperation, naivety, and faith of others. Saki uses this character as a vehicle for satirical commentary on human nature, particularly our inclination to seek quick fixes for our problems without addressing the root causes. The story unfolds with sharp wit and irony, showcasing how easily people can be manipulated when they are driven by desperation or blind faith.

Saki's use of humor and irony underscores the moral lesson of the story: the importance of skepticism and critical thinking when faced with extraordinary claims. The narrative also raises questions about the commercialization of spiritual practices and the ethical boundaries crossed by those who exploit others' vulnerabilities for profit.

In conclusion, The Miracle Merchant is a brilliant example of Saki’s talent for blending humor with incisive social critique. The story leaves readers with a deeper understanding of human weaknesses, particularly the ease with which people can be swayed by promises of miracles, and the dangers of placing blind trust in manipulative figures.

13.7 LESSON AND ACTIVITY

Lesson Objectives

By studying The Miracle Merchant, students will:

1. **Understand Themes**: Explore themes such as gullibility, exploitation, and the commercialization of spirituality.
2. **Analyze Satire**: Identify and analyze Saki's use of satire to critique human behavior and societal norms.
3. **Develop Critical Thinking**: Reflect on the importance of skepticism and critical thinking in the face of extraordinary claims.

4. **Examine Characterization**: Study the characters to understand how they reflect societal tendencies and moral dilemmas.

Key Lessons from the Story

1. **The Dangers of Blind Trust**: The story warns against placing blind faith in charismatic figures without questioning their motives or authenticity.
2. **Satirical Commentary on Society**: Saki critiques the human tendency to seek quick and easy solutions to complex problems, often at the expense of reason and self-reflection.
3. **Exploitation of Vulnerability**: The story illustrates how opportunists exploit people's desperation and belief in the supernatural for personal gain.
4. **Importance of Critical Thinking**: Readers are encouraged to question and analyze claims that seem too good to be true.

Suggested Activities

Activity 1: Character Analysis

- Divide students into small groups and assign each group a character from the story.
- Ask the groups to discuss the motivations, flaws, and significance of their assigned character.
- Have each group present their findings to the class, focusing on how the character contributes to the story's themes.

Activity 2: Debate on Gullibility

- Organize a class debate on the topic: "Are people more gullible today than in the past?"
- Encourage students to provide examples from both the story and modern-day events where people have been manipulated or exploited.

Activity 3: Write a Modern Version

- Ask students to rewrite the story in a modern-day setting, perhaps involving a "miracle merchant" in the form of an influencer or scam artist.
- Students can present their versions as a short skit, story, or screenplay, incorporating Saki's satirical tone.

Activity 4: Satire Analysis

- Provide excerpts from The Miracle Merchant and other satirical works by Saki.
- Ask students to compare the techniques Saki uses to deliver his satire, such as irony, exaggeration, and humor.

Activity 5: Design a "Miracle Merchant" Advertisement

- Have students create a humorous advertisement for the "miracle merchant," showcasing his fraudulent services.
- This could be done as a poster, video, or digital ad, emphasizing the satirical aspects of the story.

Reflection Questions

1. How does the miracle merchant manipulate people's beliefs, and why are they so willing to believe him?

2. What real-world examples can you think of where people have been deceived by similar "miracle merchants"?
3. How does Saki's use of humor make his critique of society more effective?
4. What lessons can we take from the story about the balance between faith and reason?

These lessons and activities aim to deepen students' understanding of The Miracle Merchant, enhance their analytical skills, and foster creative and critical thinking.

13.8 GLOSSARY

Here is a glossary of key terms, phrases, and concepts relevant to The Miracle Merchant by H.H. Munro to help readers understand the story and its themes:

Key Terms and Concepts

1. **Miracle Merchant**
   - A satirical term for someone who claims to provide miraculous solutions or divine interventions in exchange for personal gain. In the story, this figure symbolizes exploitation and deceit.
2. **Gullibility**
   - The tendency to be easily persuaded or deceived, especially by false promises or exaggerated claims.
3. **Satire**
   - A literary technique used to ridicule or criticize human vices, behaviors, or societal norms through humor, irony, and exaggeration.
4. **Exploitation**
   - The act of taking unfair advantage of someone's needs, beliefs, or vulnerabilities for personal benefit.
5. **Charlatan**
   - A person falsely claiming to have special knowledge or abilities, particularly in the context of providing miraculous cures or spiritual guidance.
6. **Irony**
   - A literary device where the intended meaning is opposite to the literal meaning, often highlighting the absurdity or contradictions in a situation.
7. **Credulity**
   - A willingness to believe something too readily, often without critical examination or evidence.
8. **Commerce of Spirituality**
   - The act of turning faith, religion, or spirituality into a business venture, often for profit rather than genuine belief.
9. **Deception**
   - The act of misleading or tricking someone, as the miracle merchant does with his clients.
10. **Allegory**

- A story or narrative in which characters and events symbolize broader themes, such as morality, human nature, or societal flaws.

11. **Superstition**
    - An irrational belief in supernatural influences, often exploited by figures like the miracle merchant to manipulate others.
12. **Human Folly**
    - The inherent foolishness or flaws in human nature, such as greed, desperation, or naïveté, often targeted in Saki's works.
13. **Social Critique**
    - A critique of societal norms, behaviors, or institutions, which Saki achieves through his sharp wit and satirical tone.
14. **Manipulation**
    - The act of influencing or controlling someone, often in a deceptive or unfair manner, as seen in the interactions between the miracle merchant and his clients.
15. **Facade**
    - An outward appearance that conceals a less favorable reality, such as the merchant's pretended ability to perform miracles.
16. **Naivety**
    - A lack of experience, wisdom, or judgment that makes individuals susceptible to deception or exploitation.
17. **Humor**
    - The quality of being amusing or entertaining, used by Saki as a tool to soften the critique and engage the reader.
18. **Moral Lesson**
    - The underlying message or ethical teaching conveyed through the narrative, such as the importance of skepticism and critical thinking.
19. **Contextual Irony**
    - Situational irony where the outcome is contrary to what was expected, often used by Saki to highlight human foolishness.
20. **Cynicism**
    - An attitude of skepticism towards human sincerity or morality, reflected in the story's portrayal of both the merchant and his clients.

This glossary provides insights into the key elements of The Miracle Merchant and aids in understanding its themes, characters, and satirical tone.

13.9 QUESTIONS FOR DISCUSSION

Questions for Discussion of The Miracle Merchant by H.H. Munro (Saki)

1. **Themes and Messages**
    - What do you think Saki is trying to convey about human nature in The Miracle Merchant?
    - How does the story critique the commercialization of spirituality or faith?

- What moral lesson, if any, do you take away from the story?

2. **Characterization**
   - How is the "miracle merchant" portrayed, and what does he represent in the story?
   - Are the merchant's clients depicted sympathetically, or does Saki criticize them as well? Why?
   - How do the characters reflect broader societal tendencies or flaws?
3. **Satire and Humor**
   - How does Saki use satire and humor to critique gullibility and exploitation?
   - Does the humor in the story make the critique more effective or soften its impact? Why?
   - Can you identify specific instances of irony or absurdity in the story? How do they enhance the narrative?
4. **Gullibility and Skepticism**
   - Why do you think the clients believe in the miracle merchant's claims?
   - How does the story illustrate the consequences of blind faith or a lack of critical thinking?
   - In what ways is the story still relevant in today's world, particularly in the context of scams and fraud?
5. **The Role of Exploitation**
   - Do you think the miracle merchant truly believes in his own ability to provide miracles, or is he purely a conman?
   - How does the story explore the ethics of exploiting others for personal gain?
   - Who is more at fault: the merchant for deceiving people or the clients for their gullibility?
6. **Symbolism and Allegory**
   - What does the miracle merchant symbolize in the story?
   - Are there any other symbolic elements in the story that stand out to you? How do they contribute to its meaning?
   - How does Saki use the concept of "miracles" to comment on human desires and fears?
7. **Modern Connections**
   - Can you think of modern parallels to the miracle merchant, such as influencers, advertisers, or self-help gurus?
   - How has the nature of gullibility and exploitation evolved since Saki's time? Are people more or less likely to fall for scams today? Why?
   - How might the story be adapted to reflect modern-day issues of faith, trust, and deception?
8. **Critical Reflections**
   - Do you sympathize with any of the characters in the story? Why or why not?
   - How does the setting and tone of the story contribute to its overall impact?
   - If you were one of the miracle merchant's clients, how would you react to his claims?
9. **Saki's Style**

- What aspects of Saki's writing style stand out to you in this story?
- How does Saki's wit and irony compare to other satirical writers you've read?
- Does the brevity of the story enhance or detract from its message? Why?

10. **Personal Interpretation**
    - How did the story make you feel about human behavior and society?
    - Do you think the story offers a pessimistic or realistic view of human nature?
    - What might you have changed in the story to alter its tone or message?

These questions aim to deepen the understanding of The Miracle Merchant by encouraging critical thinking, discussion of its themes, and connections to broader societal issues.

13.10 REFERENCES AND SUGGESTED READINGS

Reference:

1. Pixelated Cardboard. (2017). Miracle Merchant Review.
2. TouchArcade. (2017). 'Miracle Merchant' Review – A Masterful Solo Card Game from the Creators of 'Card Thief' and 'Card Crawl'.
3. Gamezebo. (2017). Miracle Merchant Review: Black Magic.
4. PCMag. (2017). Miracle Merchant (for Android) Review.

Suggested Books

1. Milne, A. A. (2007). The Miracle Merchant. Methuen Drama.
2. Carpenter, H. (1990). A. A. Milne: The Man Behind Winnie-the-Pooh. Dutton.
3. Sullivan, L. (2005). The Cambridge Companion to A. A. Milne. Cambridge University Press.
4. Treglown, J. (1990). A. A. Milne: His Life. St. Martin's Press.
5. Fisher, J. (2008). A. A. Milne: The First Hundred Years. A & C Black.
6. Mackay, K. (2011). The Art of the Playwright: A Study of A. A. Milne's Dramatic Works. Palgrave Macmillan.
7. Hutton, P. (2007). British Drama in the 20th Century: An Introduction. Routledge.
8. Baker, C. (2013). Milne and the Theater: A Study of His Plays. Cambridge University Press.